

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Notice to Bidders

Instructions for Contractor's Licensing

Special Provisions Title Page

Special Provisions

DIVISION 100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS		
Section	Description	Pages
101	Terms, Abbreviations, and Definitions	101-1a – 101-12a
102	Bidding Requirements and Conditions	102-1a – 102-14a
103	Award and Execution of Contract	103-1a – 103-5a
104	Scope of Work	104-1a – 104-2a
105	Control of Work	105-1a – 105-3a
106	Material Restrictions and Requirements	106-1a
107	Legal Relations and Responsibility to Public	107-1a – 107-6a
108	Prosecution and Progress	108-1a – 108-25a
109	Measurement and Payment	109-1a – 109-2a

DIVISION 200 - EARTHWORK		
Section	Description	Pages
201	Clearing and Grubbing	201-1a – 201-2a
202	Removal of Structures and Obstructions	202-1a – 202-2a
203	Excavation and Embankment	203-1a – 203-3a
204	Excavation and Backfill for Miscellaneous Facilities	204-1a
205	Excavation and Backfill for Bridge and Retaining Structures	205-1a - 205-2a
206	Excavation and Backfill for Drainage Facilities	206-1a
207	Ditch and Channel Excavation	207-1a
209	Temporary Water Pollution, Dust, and Erosion Control	209-1a - 209-28a

DIVISION 300 - BASES		
Section	Description	Pages
301	Hot Mix Asphalt Base Course	301-1a – 301-2a
304	Aggregate Base Course	304-1a
305	Aggregate Subbase Course	305-1a

DIVISION 400 - PAVEMENTS		
Section	Description	Pages
401	Hot Mix Asphalt (HMA) Pavement	401-1a – 401-37a
407	Tack Coat	407-1a
411	Portland Cement Concrete Pavement	411-1a – 411-53a

DIVISION 500 - STRUCTURES		
Section	Description	Pages
503	Concrete Structures	503-1a – 503-9a
504	Prestressed Concrete Members	504-1a – 504-3a
507	Railings	507-1a
511	Drilled Shafts	511-1a – 511-27a
540	Very Early Strength Latex Modified Concrete (VESLMC)	540-1a – 540-13a

DIVISION 600 - INCIDENTAL CONSTRUCTION		
Section	Description	Pages
601	Structural Concrete	601-1a – 601-15a
602	Reinforcing Steel	602-1a
603	Culverts and Storm Drains	603-1a
607	Chain Link Fences and Gates	607-1a
614	Street Survey Monuments	614-1a
619	Planting	619-1a
621	Enhanced Vehicle Classification System	621-1a – 621-19a
622	Roadway and Sign Lighting System	622-1a – 622-2a
623	Traffic Signal System	623-1a – 623-6a
624	Water System	624-1a – 624-2a
625	Sewer System	625-1a
626	Manholes and Valve Boxes for Water and Sewer Systems	626-1a
627	Traffic Monitoring And Signal Control System	627-1a – 627-11a
629	Pavement Markings	629-1a – 629-4a
631	Traffic Control Regulatory, Warning, and Miscellaneous Signs	631-1a
634	Portland Cement Concrete Sidewalks	634-1a – 634-2a
636	E-Construction	636-1a – 636-3a
636	Traffic Monitoring and Signal Control System	636-1a – 636-12a
638	Portland Cement Concrete Curb and Gutter	638-1a – 638-2a
641	Hydro-Mulch Seeding	641-1a
645	Work Zone Traffic Control	645-1a
647	Fiber Optic Cable	647-1a – 647-8a

650	Curb Ramps	650-1a
652	Horizontal Directional Drilling	652-1a – 652-8a
655	Dumped Riprap	655-1a
660	Gas System	660-1a – 660-3a
670	Glass Fiber Reinforced Polymer Rebar	670-1a – 670-3a
675	Mass Concrete	675-1a – 675-5a
680	Electric and Communication Systems	680-1a – 680-19a
695	Just in Time Training	695-1a – 695-2a
696	Field Office and Project Site Laboratory	696-1a
697	Project Web Page	697-1a – 697-2a
699	Mobilization	699-1a

DIVISION 700 - MATERIALS		
Section	Description	Pages
702	Bituminous Materials	702-1a
705	Joint Materials for Concrete Structures	705-1a
706	Concrete, Clay, and Plastic Pipe	706-1a
709	Reinforcing Steel, Wire Rope and Prestressing Steel	709-1a
712	Miscellaneous	712-1a
720	Macro-Synthetic Fibers for Concrete Sidewalk Reinforcement	720-1a
750	Traffic Control Sign and Marker Materials	750-1a – 750-2a
755	Pavement Marking Materials	755-1a
760	Roadway and Sign Lighting Systems Materials	760-1a – 760-2a
770	Traffic Signal Materials	770-1a – 770-11a

Requirements of Chapter 104, HRS
Wages and Hours of Employees on Public Works Law

Proposal Title Page

Proposal P-1 – P-10
Proposal Schedule **P-11 – P-44**

Surety Bid Bond

Sample Form Title Page

Contract

Performance Bond (Surety)

Performance Bond

Labor and Material Payment Bond (Surety)

Labor and Material Payment Bond

Chapter 104, HRS Compliance Certificate

Certification of Compliance for Employment of State Residents

END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS

1 **SECTION 107 - LEGAL RELATIONS AND RESPONSIBILITY TO PUBLIC**

2
3 Make the following amendments to said Section:

4
5
6 **(I)** Amend **Section 107.01 Insurance Requirements** from lines to 81 to
7 read as follows:

8
9 **“(A) Obligation of Contractor.** Contractor shall not commence any
10 work until it obtains, at its own expense, all required insurance described
11 herein. Such insurance shall be provided by an insurance company
12 authorized by the laws of the State to issue such insurance in the State of
13 Hawaii. Coverage by a “Non-Admitted” carrier is permissible provided the
14 carrier has a Best’s Rating of “A-VII” or better. The Contractor shall
15 maintain and ensure all insurance policies are current for the full period of
16 the contract until final acceptance of the work by the State. This
17 requirement excludes builders’ risk, which will end at substantial
18 completion.

19
20 The Certificate of Insurance shall contain: a clause that it is agreed
21 that any insurance maintained by the State of Hawaii will apply in excess
22 of, and not contribute with, insurance provided by this policy; and shall be
23 accompanied by endorsement form CG2010 or equivalent naming the
24 State as an additional insured to the policy which status shall be
25 maintained for the full period of the contract until final acceptance of the
26 work by State.

27
28 The Contractor shall obtain all required insurance as part of the
29 contract price. Where there is a requirement for the State of Hawaii and
30 its officers and employees to be named as additional insureds under any
31 Contractor’s insurance policy, before the State of Hawaii issues the Notice
32 to Proceed, the Contractor shall obtain and submit to the Engineer a
33 Certificate of Insurance and a written policy endorsement that confirms the
34 State of Hawaii and its officers and employees are additional insureds for
35 the specific State project number and project title under such insurance
36 policies. The written policy endorsement must be issued by the insurance
37 company insuring the Contractor for the specified policy type or by an
38 agent of such insurance company who is vested with the authority to issue
39 a written policy endorsement. The insurer’s agent shall also submit
40 written confirmation of such authority to bind the insurer. Any delays in
41 the issuance of the Notice to Proceed attributed to the failure to obtain the
42 proof of the State of Hawaii and its officers and employees’ additional
43 insured status shall be charged to the Contractor.

45 A mere Certificate of Insurance issued by a broker who represents
46 the Contractor (but not the Contractor's insurer), or by any other party who
47 is not authorized to contractually name the State as an additional insured
48 under the Contractor's insurance policy, is not sufficient to meet the
49 Contractor's insurance obligations.
50

51 Certificates shall contain a provision that coverages being certified
52 will not be cancelled or materially changed without giving the Engineer at
53 least thirty (30) days prior written notice. Contractor will immediately
54 provide written notice to the Director should any of the insurance policies
55 evidenced on its Certificate of Insurance form be cancelled, reduced in
56 scope or coverage, or not renewed upon expiration. Should any policy be
57 canceled before final acceptance of the work by the State, and the
58 Contractor fails to immediately procure replacement insurance as
59 specified, the State, in addition to all other remedies it may have for such
60 breach, reserves the right to procure such insurance and deduct the cost
61 thereof from any money due or to become due to the Contractor.
62

63 Nothing contained in these insurance requirements is to be
64 construed as limiting the extent of Contractor's responsibility for payment
65 of damages resulting from its operations under this contract, including the
66 Contractor's obligation to pay liquidated damages, nor shall it affect the
67 Contractor's separate and independent duty to defend, indemnify and hold
68 the State harmless pursuant to other provisions of this contract. In no
69 instance will the State's exercise of an option to occupy and use
70 completed portions of the work relieve the Contractor of its obligation to
71 maintain the required insurance until the date of final acceptance of the
72 work.
73

74 All insurance described herein shall be primary and cover the
75 insured for all work to be performed under the contract, all work performed
76 incidental thereto or directly or indirectly connected therewith, including
77 but not limited to traffic detour work, barricades, warnings, diversions, lane
78 closures, and other work performed outside the work area and all change
79 order work.
80

81 The Contractor shall, from time to time, furnish the Engineer, when
82 requested, satisfactory proof of coverage of each type of insurance
83 required covering the work. Failure to comply with the Engineer's request
84 may result in suspension of the work, and shall be sufficient grounds to
85 withhold future payments due the Contractor and to terminate the contract
86 for Contractor's default.
87

88 **(B) Types of Insurance.** Contractor shall purchase and
89 maintain insurance described below which shall provide coverage
90 against claims arising out of the Contractor's operations under the

91 contract, whether such operations be by the Contractor itself or by any
92 subcontractor or by anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of
93 them or by anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable.
94

95 **(1) Workers' Compensation.** The Contractor shall obtain
96 worker's compensation insurance for all persons whom they
97 employ in carrying out the work under this contract. This insurance
98 shall be in strict conformity with the requirements of the most
99 current and applicable State of Hawaii Worker's Compensation
100 Insurance laws in effect on the date of the execution of this contract
101 and as modified during the duration of the contract.
102

103 **(2) Auto Liability.** The Contractor shall obtain Auto Liability
104 Insurance covering all owned, non-owned and hired autos with a
105 Combined single Limit of not less than \$1,000,000 per occurrence
106 for bodily injury and property damage with the State of Hawaii
107 named as additional insured. Refer to SPECIAL CONDITIONS for
108 any additional requirements.
109

110 **(3) General Liability.** The Contractor shall obtain General
111 Liability insurance with a limit of not less than \$2,000,000 per
112 occurrence and in the Aggregates for each of the following:
113

- 114 (a) Products - Completed/Operations Aggregate,
- 115
- 116 (b) Personal & Advertising Injury, and
- 117
- 118 (c) Bodily Injury & Property Damage
119

120 The General Liability insurance shall include the State as an
121 Additional Insured. The required limit of insurance may be provided
122 by a single policy or with a combination of primary and excess
123 policies. Refer to SPECIAL CONDITIONS for any additional
124 requirements.
125

126 **(4) Builders Risk For All Work.** The Contractor shall take out
127 a policy of builder's risk insurance for the full replacement value of
128 the project work; from a company licensed or otherwise authorized
129 to do business in the State of Hawaii; naming the State as an
130 additional insured under each policy; and covering all work, labor,
131 and materials furnished by such Contractor and all its
132 subcontractors against loss by fire, windstorm, tsunamis,
133 earthquakes, lightning, explosion, other perils covered by the
134 standard Extended Coverage Endorsement, vandalism, and
135 malicious mischief. Refer to SPECIAL CONDITIONS for any
136 additional requirements."

137 (II) Amend **Section 107.03 Working Hours; Night Work.** to add the following
138 after line 142:

139

140 “Should the Contractor require extended work hours, the Contractor may submit
141 a request to the Engineer. The request shall include dates, duration, location,
142 and type of work. Refer to Section 107.04 Overtime and Nightwork amended
143 herein for Noise Variance requirements.”

144

145 (III) Amend **Section 107.04 Overtime and Night Work** to add the following
146 after line 158:

147

148 “Contractor shall obtain applicable Noise Variance permits and submit to the
149 Engineer copies of the Noise Variance Permits with noise variance hours, control
150 conditions, and restrictions. The Engineer shall review and approve all Noise
151 Variance permit applications prior to the Contractor submitting their application”

152

153 (IV) Amend Section 107.10 Furnishing Right-of-Way by adding the following
154 paragraphs after line 279:

155

156 “The State DOT is processing Right-of Entry and Rental Agreements with
157 the following property owners and the Contractor shall comply with terms of the
158 Right-of-Entry and Rental Agreements, including but not limited to, the following:

159

160 (A) D.R. Horton TMK (1) 9-1-17:194, 195, 196, 201; 9-1-18:012, 019 (portion);
161 Gagko Hojin Tokai Daigaku TMK (1) 9-1-16:221 (portion);
162 Grace Pacific TMK (1) 9-1-16:004 (portion);
163 Hawaiian Electric TMK (1) 9-1-16:182 (portion);
164 HBP Partners TMK (1) 9-1-18:016 (portion); and
165 University of Hawaii TMK (1) 9-1-16:179, 183, 220 (portion)

166

167 (1) STATE's Responsibility. The State shall be responsible, to the extent
168 permitted by law, for damage or injury caused by the State's officers and
169 employees in the scope of their employment provided that the State's
170 liability for such damage or injury has been determined by a court or
171 agreed to by the State. The State shall pay for such damage and injury
172 provided that funds are appropriate and allotted for that purpose.

173

174 (2) Insurance by CONTRACTOR. The State shall require the
175 CONTRACTOR to include the GRANTOR and the STATE as additional
176 insured on the insurance policies (Comprehensive Personal Injury and
177 Property Damage Liability; Automobile Bodily Injury and Property
178 Damage; and Worker's Compensation) that will be prescribed by the
179 proposed Project construction contract. Said insurance policies shall also
180 provide a waiver of subrogation in GRANTOR's favor. The STATE shall
181 require the CONTRACTOR to provide written verification of compliance in

182 the form of an insurance certificate to the GRANTOR prior to the start of
183 Project construction.

184

185 (3) Indemnification by CONTRACTOR. The STATE shall ensure that
186 the CONTRACTOR shall execute an agreement whereby the
187 CONTRACTOR would indemnify the GRANTOR against any liability,
188 including all loss, damages, costs, expenses and attorney's fees, for any
189 damage, if any, or injury to or death of persons when such damage,
190 injury or death is caused by negligence, gross negligence, or willful
191 action of the CONTRACTOR in the exercise of the rights granted under
192 this Agreement; provided that the CONTRACTOR shall not be obligated
193 to indemnify the GRANTOR if and to the extent that such damage, injury,
194 or death is caused by the negligence of the GRANTOR or any of the
195 GRANTOR's officers, employees, agents, licensees, invitees, contractors,
196 representatives, or guests.

197

198 (4) Restoration. Upon the full or partial termination of this Agreement, the
199 STATE and/or its contractors shall remove all equipment or tangible
200 personal property from the Property or such portion thereof not required
201 by the STATE and shall restore the ground condition of only of that portion
202 of the Property no longer required by the STATE to the condition as
203 mentioned in the STATE's offer letter to the property owners.

204

205 **(V) Add Section 107.18 Citizen and Residential Labor Force** after line 745
206 to read as follows:

207

208 **“107.18 Citizen and Residential Labor Force.**

209

210 **(A) Citizen Labor.** No person shall be employed as a laborer or
211 mechanic unless such person is a citizen of the United States or eligible to
212 become one; provided that persons without such qualifications may be
213 employed with the approval of the Governor until persons who are citizens
214 and are competent for such services are available for hire.

215

216 **(B) Residential Labor Force.** In accordance with Act 192; SLH 2011,
217 no less than eighty (80) percent of the bidder's labor force working on the
218 contract shall be provided by Hawaii residents. This act applies to all
219 construction procurements under HRS Chapter 103D; however this act
220 does not apply to procurements for professional services under Section
221 103D-304 and small purchases under Section 103D-305. This act is also
222 applicable to any subcontract of \$50,000.00 or more in connection with
223 this contract.

224

225 Resident means a person who is physically present in the State of
226 Hawaii at the time the person claims to have established the person's

227 domicile in the State of Hawaii and shows the person's intent is to make
228 Hawaii the person's primary residence.

229
230 **(C)** Percentage of workforce shall be determined by dividing the labor
231 hours (including subcontractors) provided by residents working on the
232 project divided by the total number of hours worked by all employees of
233 the contractor in the performance of the contract. Hours worked by
234 employees within shortage trades as determined by the Department of
235 Labor and Industrial Relations shall not be included in the calculation of
236 this percentage.

237
238 **(D)** Certification of compliance with the forgoing provisions shall be
239 made by the contractor in the form of a written oath submitted to the
240 Procurement Officer on a monthly basis for the duration of the contract.

241
242 **(E)** Sanctions for non compliance with these provisions are as follows:

243
244 **(1)** With respect to the General Contractor, withholding of
245 payment on the contract until the Contractor or its
246 Subcontractor complies with HRS Chapter 103B as
247 amended by Act 192, SLH 2011.

248
249 **(2)** Proceedings for debarment or suspension of the Contractor
250 or Subcontractor under Hawaii Revised Statutes § 103D-
251 702.

252
253 This Section shall not apply when its application will disqualify the State
254 from receiving federal funds or aid.”

255
256
257
258
259

END OF SECTION 107

1 Amend **Section 108 – PROSECUTION AND PROGRESS** to read as follows:
2

3 **“SECTION 108 – PROSECUTION AND PROGRESS**
4

5
6 **108.01 Notice to Proceed (NTP).**

7 A Notice To Proceed will be issued to the Contractor not more 30 calendar days
8 after the contract certification date. The Engineer may suspend the contract
9 before issuing the Notice To Proceed, in which case the Contractor’s remedies are
10 exclusively those set forth in Subsection 108.10 – Suspension of Work.
11

12 The Contractor shall be allowed up to 450 calendar days after the Notice
13 to Proceed to begin physical work. The Start Work Date will be established when
14 this period ends or on the actual day that physical work begins, whichever is first.
15 Charging of Contract Time will begin on the Start Work Date. The Contractor shall
16 notify the Engineer, in writing, at least five working days before beginning physical
17 work
18

19 In the event that the Contractor fails to start physical work within the time
20 specified, the Engineer may terminate the contract in accordance with Subsection
21 108.11 – Termination of Contract for Cause.
22

23 During the period between the Notice to Proceed and the Start Work Date
24 the Contractor should adjust work forces, equipment, schedules, and procure
25 materials and required permits, prior to beginning physical work.
26

27 Any physical work done prior to the Start Work Date will be considered
28 unauthorized work. If the Engineer does not direct that the unauthorized work be
29 removed, it shall be paid for after the Start Work Date and only if it is acceptable.
30

31 In the event that the Engineer establishes, in writing, a Start Work Date that
32 is beyond 450 calendar days from the Notice to Proceed date, the Contractor may
33 submit a claim in accordance with, Subsection 107.15 – Disputes and Claims for
34 increased labor and material costs which are directly attributable to the delay
35 beyond the first 450 calendar days after the Notice to Proceed date.
36

37 The Contractor shall notify the Engineer at least 24 hours before restarting
38 physical work after a suspension of work pursuant to Subsection 108.10 –
39 Suspension of Work.
40

41 Once physical work has begun, the Contractor shall work expeditiously and
42 pursue the work diligently to completion with the contract time. If a portion of the
43 work is to be done in stages, the Contractor shall leave the area safe and usable
44 for the user agency and the public at the end of each stage.
45

46 **108.02 Prosecution of Work.** Unless otherwise permitted by the Engineer, in
47 writing, the Contractor shall not commence with physical construction unless
48 sufficient materials and equipment are available for either continuous construction
49 or completion of a specified portion of the work.

50
51 **108.03 Preconstruction Submittals.** The awardee shall submit to the
52 Engineer for information and review the pre-construction submittals within 21
53 calendar days from award. Until the items listed below are received and found
54 acceptable by the Engineer, the Contractor shall not start physical work unless
55 otherwise authorized to do so in writing and subject to such conditions set by the
56 Engineer. Charging of Contract Time will not be delayed, and additional contract
57 time will not be granted due to Contractor delay in submitting acceptable
58 preconstruction submittals. No progress payment will be made to the Contractor
59 until the Engineer acknowledges, in writing, receipt of the following
60 preconstruction submittals acceptable to the Engineer:

- 61
62 (1) List of the Superintendent and other Supervisory Personnel, and
63 their contact information.
- 64
65 (2) Name of person(s) authorized to sign for the Contractor.
- 66
67 (3) Work Schedule including hours of operation.
- 68
69 (4) Initial Progress Schedule (See Subsection 108.06 – Progress
70 Schedule).
- 71
72 (5) Water Pollution and Siltation Control Submittals, including Site-
73 Specific Best Management Practice Plan.
- 74
75 (6) Solid Waste Disposal form.
- 76
77 (7) Tax Rates.
- 78
79 (8) Insurance Rates.
- 80
81 (9) Certificate of Insurance, satisfactory to the Engineer, indicating that
82 the Contractor has in place all insurance coverage required by the contract
83 documents.
- 84
85 (10) Schedule of agreed prices.
- 86
87 (11) List of suppliers.
- 88
89 (12) Traffic Control Plan, if applicable.

90 **108.04 Character and Proficiency of Workers.** The Contractor shall at all
91 times provide adequate supervision and sufficient labor and equipment for
92 prosecuting the work to full completion in the manner and within the time required
93 by the contract. The superintendent and all other representatives of the
94 Contractor shall act in a civil and honest manner in all dealings with the Engineer,
95 all other State officials and representatives, and the public, in connection with the
96 work.

97
98 All workers shall possess the proper license, certification, job classification,
99 skill, training, and experience necessary to properly perform the work assigned to
100 them.

101
102 The Engineer may direct the removal of any worker(s) who does not carry
103 out the assigned work in a proper and skillful manner or who is disrespectful,
104 intemperate, violent, or disorderly. The worker shall be removed forthwith by the
105 Contractor and will not work again without the written permission of the Engineer.

106
107 **108.05 Contract Time.**

108
109 **(A) Calculation of Contract Time.** When the contract time is on a
110 working day basis, the total contract time allowed for the performance of
111 the work will be the number of working days shown in the contract plus any
112 additional working days authorized in writing as provided hereinafter. The
113 count of elapsed working days to be charged against contract time, will
114 begin from the Start Work Date and will continue consecutively to the date
115 of Substantial Completion. When multiple shifts are used to perform the
116 work, the State will not consider the hours worked over the normal eight
117 working hours per day or night as an additional working day.

118
119 When the contract is on a calendar day basis, the total contract time
120 allowed for the performance of the work will be the number of days shown
121 in the contract plus any additional days authorized in writing as provided
122 hereinafter. The count of elapsed days to be charged against contract time
123 will begin from the Start Work Date and will continue consecutively to the
124 date of Substantial Completion. The Engineer will exclude days elapsing
125 between the orders of the Engineer to suspend work and resume work for
126 suspensions not the fault of the Contractor.

127
128 **(B) Modifications of Contract Time.** Whenever the Contractor
129 believes that an extension of contract time is justified, the Contractor shall
130 serve written notice on the Engineer not more than five working days after
131 the occurrence of the event that causes a delay or justifies a contract time
132 extension. Contract time may be adjusted for the following reasons or
133 events, but only if and to the extent the critical path has been affected:

135 **(1) Changes in the Work, Additional Work, and Delays**
136 **Caused by the State.** If the Contractor believes that an extension of
137 time is justified on account of any act or omission by the State, and is
138 not adequately provided for in a field order or change order, it must
139 request the additional time as provided above. At the request of the
140 Engineer, the Contractor must show how the critical path will be
141 affected and must also support the time extension request with
142 schedules, as well as statements from its subcontractors, suppliers,
143 or manufacturers, as necessary. Claims for compensation for any
144 altered or additional work will be determined pursuant to Subsection
145 104.02 – Changes.

146
147 Additional time to perform the extra work will be added to the
148 time allowed in the contract without regard to the date the change
149 directive was issued, even if the contract completion date has
150 passed. A change requiring time issued after contract time has
151 expired will not constitute an excusal or waiver of pre-existing
152 Contractor delay.

153
154 **(2) Delay for Permits.** For delays in the routine application and
155 processing time required to obtain necessary permits, including
156 permits to be obtained from State agencies, the Engineer may grant
157 an extension provided that the permit takes longer than 30 days to
158 acquire and the delay is not caused by the Contractor, and provided
159 that as soon as the delay occurs, the Contractor notifies the
160 Engineer in writing that the permits are not available. Permits
161 required by the contract that take less than 30 days to acquire from
162 the time which the appropriate documents are granted shall be
163 acquired between Notice to Proceed and Start Work Date or
164 accounted for in the contractor's progress schedule. Time
165 extensions will be the exclusive relief granted on account of such
166 delays.

167
168 **(3) Delays Beyond Contractor's Control.** For delays caused by
169 acts of God, a public enemy, fire, inclement weather days or
170 adverse conditions resulting therefrom, earthquakes, floods,
171 epidemics, quarantine restrictions, labor disputes impacting the
172 Contractor or the State, freight embargoes and other reasons
173 beyond the Contractor's control, the Contractor may be granted an
174 extension of time provided that:

175
176 **(a)** In the written notice of delay to the Engineer, the
177 Contractor describes possible effects on the completion date
178 of the contract. The description of delays shall:
179

180
181
182
183
184
185
186
187
188
189
190
191
192
193
194
195
196
197
198
199
200
201
202
203
204
205
206
207
208
209
210
211
212
213
214
215
216
217
218
219
220
221
222
223

1. State specifically the reason or reasons for the delay and fully explain in a detailed chronology how the delay affects the critical path.
2. Include copies of pertinent documentation to support the time extension request.
3. Cite the anticipated period of delay and the time extension requested.
4. State either that the above circumstances have been cleared and normal working conditions restored as of a certain day or that the above circumstances will continue to prevent completion of the project.

(b) The Contractor shall notify the Engineer in writing when the delay ends. Time extensions will be the exclusive relief granted and no additional compensation will be paid the Contractor for such delays.

(4) Delays in Delivery of Materials or Equipment. Due to COVID 19 and other supply chain issues, the Contractor shall anticipate delays into the project schedule at the time of bidding. Delay costs proven not anticipated at the time of bidding may be considered additional costs. For delays in delivery of materials or equipment, which occur as a result of unforeseeable causes beyond the control and without fault of the Contractor, its subcontractor(s) or supplier(s), time extensions shall be the exclusive relief granted and no additional compensation will be paid the Contractor on account of such delay. The delay shall not exceed the difference between the originally scheduled delivery date and the actual delivery date. The Contractor may be granted an extension of time provided that it complies with the following procedures:

(a) The Contractor’s written notice to the Engineer must describe the delays and state the effect such delays may have on the critical path.

(b) The Contractor, if requested, must submit to the Engineer within five days after a firm delivery date for the material and equipment is established, a written statement regarding the delay. The Contractor must justify the delay as follows:

224
225
226
227
228
229
230
231
232
233
234
235
236
237
238
239
240
241
242
243
244
245
246
247
248
249
250
251
252
253
254
255
256
257
258
259
260
261
262
263
264
265
266
267
268

1. State specifically all reasons for the delay. Explain in a detailed chronology the effect of the delay on the critical path.
2. Submit copies of purchase order(s), factory invoice(s), bill(s) of lading, shipping manifest(s), delivery tag(s), and any other documents to support the time extension request.
3. Cite the start and end date of the delay and the time extension requested.

(5) Delays for Suspension of Work. When the performance of the work is totally suspended for one or more days (calendar or working days, as appropriate) by order of the Engineer in accordance with Subsections 108.10(A)(1), 108.10(A)(2), or 108.10(A)(5) the number of days from the effective date of the Engineer's order to suspend operations to the effective date of the Engineer's order to resume operations shall not be counted as contract time and the contract completion date will be adjusted. During periods of partial suspensions of the work, the Contractor will be granted a time extension only if the partial suspension affects the critical path. If the Contractor believes that an extension of time is justified for a partial suspension of work, it must request the extension in writing at least five working days before the partial suspension will affect the critical operation(s) in progress. The Contractor must show how the critical path was increased based on the status of the work and must also support its claim if requested, with statements from its subcontractors. A suspension of work will not constitute a waiver of pre-existing Contractor delay.

(6) Contractor Caused Delays. No time extension will be granted under the following circumstances:

- (a) Delays within the Contractor's control in performing the work caused by the Contractor, subcontractor, supplier, or any combination thereof.
- (b) Delays within the Contractor's control in arrival of materials and equipment caused by the Contractor, subcontractor, supplier, or any combination thereof, in ordering, fabricating, and delivery.
- (c) Delays requested for changes which do not affect the critical path.

269 (d) Delays caused by the failure of the Contractor to make
270 submittals in a timely manner for review and acceptance by
271 the Engineer, such as but not limited to shop drawings,
272 descriptive sheets, material samples, and color samples
273 except as covered in Subsection 108.05(B)(3) – Delays
274 Beyond Contractor’s Control and 108.05(B)(4) – Delays in
275 Delivery of Materials or Equipment.

276
277 (e) Delays caused by the failure to submit sufficient
278 information and data in a timely manner in the proper form in
279 order to obtain necessary permits related to the work.

280
281 (f) Failure to follow the procedure within the time allowed
282 by contract to request a time extension.

283
284 (g) Failure of the Contractor to provide evidence sufficient
285 to support the time extension request.

286
287 (7) **Reduction in Time.** If the State deletes or modifies any
288 portion of the work, an appropriate reduction of contract time may be
289 made in accordance with Subsection 104.02 - Changes.

290
291 **108.06 Progress Schedules.**

292
293 (A) **Forms of Schedule.** All schedules shall be submitted using the
294 specific computer program designated in the bid documents. If no such
295 scheduling software program is designated, then all schedules shall be
296 submitted using the latest version of Microsoft Project by Microsoft or
297 approved equivalent software program.

298
299 Schedule submittals shall be as follows:

300
301 (1) **For Contracts \$2,000,000 or less or For Contract Time 100**
302 **Working Days or 140 Calendar Days or Less.** For contracts of
303 \$2,000,000 or less or for contract time of 100 working days or 140
304 calendar days or less, the progress schedule will be a Time Scaled
305 Logic Diagram (TSLD). The Contractor shall submit a TSLD
306 submittal package meeting the following requirements and having
307 these essential and distinctive elements:

308
309 (a) The major features of work, such as but not limited to
310 BMP installation, grubbing, roadway excavation, structure
311 excavation, structure construction, shown in the chronological
312 order in which the Contractor proposes to work that feature or
313 work and its location on the project. The schedule shall
314 account for normal inclement weather, unusual soil or other

315
316
317
318
319
320
321
322
323
324
325
326
327
328
329
330
331
332
333
334
335
336
337
338
339
340
341
342
343
344
345
346
347
348
349
350
351
352
353
354
355
356
357
358
359
360
361

conditions that may influence the progress of the work, schedules, and coordination required by any utility, off or on site fabrications, and other pertinent factors that relate to progress;

(b) All features listed or not listed in the contract documents that the Contractor considers a controlling factor for the timely completion of the contract work.

(c) The time span and sequence of the activities or events for each feature, and its interrelationship and interdependencies in time and logic to other features in order to complete the project.

(d) The total anticipated time necessary to complete work required by the contract.

(e) A chronological listing of critical intermediate dates or time periods for features or milestones or phases that can affect timely completion of the project.

(f) Major activities related to the location on the project.

(g) Non-construction activities, such as submittal and acceptance periods for shop drawings and material, procurement, testing, fabrication, mobilization, and demobilization or order dates of long lead material.

(h) Set schedule logic for out of sequence activities to retain logic. In addition, open ends shall be non-critical.

(i) Show target bars for all activities.

(j) Vertical and horizontal sight lines both major and minor shall be used as well as a separator line between groups. The Engineer will determine frequency and style.

(k) The file name, print date, revision number, data and project title and number shall be included in the title block.

(l) Have columns with the appropriate data in them for activity ID, description, original duration, remaining duration, early start, early finish, total float, percent complete, resources. The resource column shall list who is responsible for the work to be done in the activity. These columns shall be to the left of the bar chart.

362 **(2) For Contracts Which Have A Contract Amount More Than**
363 **\$2,000,000 Or Having A Contract Time Of More Than 100**
364 **Working Days Or 140 Calendar Days.** For contracts which have a
365 contract amount more than \$2,000,000 or contract time of more than
366 100 working days or 140 calendar days, the Contractor shall submit
367 a Timed-Scaled Logic Diagram (TSLD) meeting the following
368 requirements and having these essential and distinctive elements:
369

370 **(a)** The information and requirements listed in Subsection
371 108.06(A)(1) – For Contracts \$2,000,000 or Less or For
372 Contract Time 100 Working Days or 140 Calendar Days or
373 Less.

374 **(b)** Additional reports and graphics available from the
375 software as requested by the Engineer.
376

377 **(c)** Sufficient detail to allow at least weekly monitoring of
378 the Contractor and subcontractor's operations.
379

380 **(d)** The time scaled schematic shall be on a calendar or
381 working days basis. What will be used shall be determined by
382 how the contract keeps track of time. It will be the same. Plot
383 the critical calendar dates anticipated.
384

385 **(e)** Breakdown of activity, such as forming, placing
386 reinforcing steel, concrete pouring and curing, and stripping
387 in concrete construction. Indicate location of work to be done
388 in such detail that it would be easily determined where work
389 would be occurring within approximately 200 feet.
390

391 **(f)** Latest start and finish dates for critical path activities.
392

393 **(g)** Identify responsible subcontractor, supplier, and others
394 for their respective activity.
395

396 **(h)** No individual activity shall have duration of more than
397 20 calendar days unless requested and approved by the
398 Engineer.
399

400 **(i)** All activities shall have work breakdown structure
401 codes and activity codes. The activity codes shall have
402 coding that incorporates information for phase, location, who
403 is responsible for doing work and type of operation and
404 activity description.
405
406

407 (j) Incorporate all physical access and availability
408 restraints.

409
410 **(B) Inspection and Testing.** All schedules shall provide reasonable
411 time and opportunity for the Engineer to inspect and test each work activity.
412

413 **(C) Engineer's Acceptance of Progress Schedule.** The submittal of,
414 and the Engineer's receipt of any progress schedule, shall not be deemed
415 an agreement to modify any terms or conditions of the contract. Any
416 modifications to the contract terms and conditions that appear in or may be
417 inferred from an acceptable schedule will not be valid or enforceable unless
418 and until the Engineer exercises discretion to issue an appropriate change
419 order. Nor shall any submittal or receipt imply the Engineer's approval of
420 the schedule's breakdown, its individual elements, any critical path that may
421 be shown, nor shall it obligate the State to make its personnel available
422 outside normal working hours or the working hours established by the
423 Contract in order to accommodate such schedule. The Contractor has the
424 risk of all elements (whether or not shown) of the schedule and its
425 execution. No claim for additional compensation, time, or both, shall be
426 made by the Contractor or recognized by the Engineer for delays during
427 any period for which an acceptable progress schedule or an updated
428 progress schedule as required by Subsection 108.06(E) – Contractor's
429 Continuing Schedule Submittal Requirements had not been submitted. Any
430 acceptance or approval of the schedule shall be for general format only and
431 shall not be deemed an agreement by the State that the construction
432 means, methods, and resources shown on the schedule will result in work
433 that conforms to the contract requirements or that the sequences or
434 durations indicated are feasible.
435

436 **(D) Initial Progress Schedule.** The Contractor shall submit an initial
437 progress schedule. The initial progress schedule shall consist of the
438 following:
439

- 440 (1) Four sets of the TSLD schedule.
- 441
- 442 (2) All the software files and data to re-create the TSLD in a
443 computerized software format as specified by the Engineer.
444
- 445 (3) A listing of equipment that is anticipated to be used on the
446 project. Including the type, size, make, year of manufacture, and all
447 information necessary to identify the equipment in the Rental Rate
448 Blue Book for Construction Equipment.
449
- 450 (4) An anticipated manpower requirement graph plotting contract
451 time and total manpower requirement. This may be superimposed
452 over the payment graph.
453

454 (5) A Method Statement that is a detailed narrative describing the
455 work to be done and the method by which the work shall be
456 accomplished for each major activity. A major activity is an activity
457 that has one or more of the following:

- 458 (a) Has a duration longer than five days.
- 459 (b) Is a milestone activity.
- 460 (c) Is a contract item that exceeds \$10,000 on the contract
461 cost proposal.
- 462 (d) Is a critical path activity.
- 463 (e) Is an activity designated as such by the Engineer.

464 Each Method Statement shall include the following items
465 needed to fulfill the schedule:

- 466 (a) Quantity, type, make, and model of equipment.
- 467 (b) The manpower to do the work, specifying worker
468 classification.
- 469 (c) The production rate per eight hour day, or the working
470 hours established by the contract documents needed to meet
471 the time indicated on the schedule. If the production rate is
472 not for eight hours, the number of working hours shall be
473 indicated.

474 (6) Two sets of color time-scaled project evaluation and review
475 technique charts ("PERT") using the activity box template of Logic –
476 Early Start or such other template designated by the Engineer.

477 If the contract documents establish a sequence or order for the work,
478 the initial progress schedule shall conform to such sequence or order.

479 **(E) Contractor's Continuing Schedule Submittal Requirements.**
480 After the acceptance of the initial TSLD and when construction starts, the
481 Contractor shall submit four plotted progress schedules, two PERT charts,
482 and reports on all construction activities every two weeks (bi-weekly). This
483 scheduled bi-weekly submittal shall also include an updated version of the
484 project schedule in a computerized software format as specified by the
485 Engineer. The submittal shall have all the information needed to re-create
486 that time period's TSLD plot and reports. The bi-weekly submittal shall
487 include, but not limited to, an update of activities based on actual durations,
488

500 all new activities and any changes in duration or start or finish dates of any
501 activity.

502
503 The Contractor shall submit with every update, in report form
504 acceptable to the Engineer, a list of changes to the progress schedule since
505 the previous schedule submittal. The Engineer may change the frequency
506 of the submittal requirements but may not require a submittal of the
507 schedule to be more than once a week. The Engineer may decrease the
508 frequency of the submittal of the bi-weekly schedule.

509
510 The Contractor shall submit updates of the anticipated work
511 completion graph, equipment listing, manpower requirement graph or
512 method statement when requested by the Engineer. The Contractor shall
513 submit such updates within 4 calendar days from the date of the request by
514 the Engineer.

515
516 The Engineer may withhold progress payment until the Contractor is
517 in compliance with all schedule update requirements

518 **(F) Float.** All float appearing on a schedule is a shared commodity.
519 Float does not belong to or exist for the exclusive use or benefit of either
520 the State or the Contractor. The State or the Contractor has the opportunity
521 to use available float until it is depleted. Float has no monetary value.

522
523 **(G) Scheduled Meetings.** The Contractor shall meet on a bi-weekly
524 basis with the Engineer to review the progress schedule. The Contractor
525 shall have someone attending the meeting that can answer all questions on
526 the TSLD and other schedule related submittals.

527
528 **(H) Accelerated Schedule; Early Completion.** If the Contractor
529 submits an accelerated schedule (shorter than the contract time), the
530 Engineer's review and acceptance of an accelerated schedule does not
531 constitute an agreement or obligation by the State to modify the contract
532 time or completion date. The Contractor is solely responsible for and shall
533 accept all risks and any delays, other than those that can be directly and
534 solely attributable to the State, that may occur during the work, until the
535 contract completion date. The contract time or completion date is
536 established for the benefit of the State and cannot be changed without an
537 appropriate change order or Substantial Completion granted by the State.
538 The State may accept the work before the completion date is established,
539 but is not obligated to do so.
540

541 If the TSLD indicates an early completion of the project, the
542 Contractor shall, upon submittal of the schedule, cooperate with the
543 Engineer in explaining how it will be achieved. In addition, the Contractor
544 shall submit the above explanation in writing which shall include the State's
545 part, if any, in achieving the early completion date. Early completion of the
546 project shall not rely on changes to the Contract Documents unless
547 approved by the Engineer.
548

549 **(I) Contractor Responsibilities.** The Contractor shall promptly
550 respond to any inquiries from the Engineer regarding any schedule
551 submission. The Contractor shall adjust the schedule to address directives
552 from the Engineer and shall resubmit the TSLD package to the Engineer
553 until the Engineer finds it acceptable.
554

555 The Contractor shall perform the work in accordance with the
556 submitted TSLD. The Engineer may require the Contractor to provide
557 additional work forces and equipment to bring the progress of the work into
558 conformance with the TSLD at no increase in contract price or contract time
559 whenever the Engineer determines that the progress of the work does not
560 insure completion within the specified contract time.
561

562 **108.07 Weekly Meeting.** In addition to the bi-weekly schedule meetings, the
563 Contractor shall be available to meet once a week with the Engineer at the time
564 and place as determined by the Engineer to discuss the work and its progress
565 including but not limited to, the progress of the project, potential problems,
566 coordination of work, submittals, erosion control reports, etc. The Contractor's
567 personnel attending shall have the authority to make decisions and answer
568 questions.
569

570 The Contractor shall bring to weekly meetings a detailed work schedule
571 showing the next three weeks' work. Directly submit an informational copy of the
572 three-week schedule to the Material Testing Research Branch (MTRB) on the
573 same day as the weekly meeting is held or was to be held. An informational copy
574 is for informational use only and requires no response or further action from the
575 MTRB. Number of copies of the detailed work schedule to be submitted will be
576 determined by the Engineer. The three-week schedule is in addition to the TSLD
577 and shall in no way be considered as a substitute for the TSLD or vice versa. The
578 three-week schedule shall show:
579

580 **(a)** All construction events, traffic control and BMP related activities in
581 such detail that the Engineer will be able to determine at what location and
582 type of work will be done for any day for the next three weeks. This is for
583 the State to use to plan its manpower requirements for that time period.
584

585 **(b)** The duration of all events and delays.
586

587 (c) The critical path clearly marked in red or marked in a manner that
588 makes it clearly distinguishable from other paths and is acceptable to the
589 Engineer.

590
591 (d) Critical submittals and requests for information (RFI's).

592
593 (e) The project title, project number, date created, period the schedule
594 covers, Contractor's name and creator of the schedule on each page.

595
596 Two days prior to each weekly meeting, the Contractor shall submit
597 a list of outstanding submittals, RFIs and issues that require discussion.

598
599 **108.08 Liquidated Damages for Failure to Complete the Work or Portions**
600 **of the Work on Time.** The actual amount of damages resulting from the
601 Contractor's failure to complete the contract in a timely manner is difficult to
602 accurately determine. Therefore, the amount of such damages shall be liquidated
603 damages as set forth herein and in the special provisions. The State may, at its
604 discretion, deduct the amount from monies due or that may become due under the
605 contract.

606
607 When the Contractor fails to reach substantial completion of the work for
608 which liquidated damages are specified, within the time or times fixed in the
609 contract or any extension thereof, in addition to all other remedies for breach that
610 may be available to the State, the Contractor shall pay liquidated damages to the
611 State, in the amount of \$25,000 per working day.

612
613 (A) **Liquidated Damages Upon Termination.** If the State terminates
614 on account of Contractor's default, liquidated damages may be charged
615 against the defaulting Contractor and its surety until final completion of
616 work.

617
618 (B) **Liquidated Damages for Failure to Complete the Punchlist.** The
619 Contractor shall complete the work on any punchlist created after the pre-
620 final inspection, within the contract time or any extension thereof.

621
622 When the Contractor fails to complete the work on such punchlist
623 within the contract time or any extension thereof, the Contractor shall pay
624 liquidated damages to the State of 20 percent of the amount of liquidated
625 damages established for failure to substantially complete the work within
626 contract time. Liquidated damages shall not be assessed for the period
627 between:

628
629 (1) Notice from the Contractor that the project is substantially
630 complete and the time the punchlist is delivered to the Contractor.

632 (2) The date of the completion of punchlist as determined by the
633 Engineer and the date of the successful final inspection, and
634

635 (3) The date of the Final Inspection that results in Substantial
636 Completion and the receipt by the Contractor of the written notice of
637 Substantial Completion.
638

639 (C) **Actual Damages Recoverable If Liquidated Damages Deemed**
640 **Unenforceable.** In the event a court of competent jurisdiction holds that
641 any liquidated damages assessed pursuant to this contract are
642 unenforceable, the State will be entitled to recover its actual damages for
643 Contractor's failure to complete the work, or any designated portion of the
644 work within the time set by the contract.
645

646 **108.09 Rental Fees for Unauthorized Lane Closure or Occupancy.** In
647 addition to all other remedies available to the State for Contractor's breach of the
648 terms of the contract, the Engineer will assess the rental fees in the amount of
649 \$500 for every one-to fifteen-minute increment or portion thereof, for each location,
650 for each roadway lane closed to public use or encroached upon or occupied
651 beyond the time periods authorized in the contract or by the Engineer. The State
652 may, at its discretion, deduct the amount from monies due or that may become
653 due under the contract. The rental fee may be waived in whole or part if the
654 Engineer determines that the unauthorized period of lane closure or occupancy
655 was due to factors beyond the control of the Contractor. Equipment breakdown is
656 not a cause to waive liquidated damages.
657

658 **108.10 Suspension of Work.**
659

660 (A) **Suspension of Work.** The Engineer may, by written order, suspend
661 the performance of the work, either in whole or in part, for such periods as
662 the Engineer may deem necessary, for any cause, including but not limited
663 to:
664

665 (1) Weather or soil conditions considered unsuitable for
666 prosecution of the work.
667

668 (2) Whenever a redesign that may affect the work is deemed
669 necessary by the Engineer.
670

671 (3) Unacceptable noise or dust arising from the construction even
672 if it does not violate any law or regulation.
673

674 (4) Failure on the part of the Contractor to:
675

676 (a) Correct conditions unsafe for the general public or for
677 the workers.

678
679
680
681
682
683
684
685
686
687
688
689
690
691
692
693
694
695
696
697
698
699
700
701
702
703
704
705
706
707
708
709
710
711
712
713
714
715
716
717
718
719
720
721
722

(b) Carry out orders given by the Engineer.

(c) Perform the work in strict compliance with the provisions of the contract.

(d) Provide adequate supervision on the jobsite.

(5) The convenience of the State.

(B) Partial and Total Suspension. Suspension of work on some but not all items of work shall be considered a “partial suspension”. Suspension of work on all items shall be considered “total suspension”. The period of suspension shall be computed from the date set out in the written order for work to cease until the date of the order for work to resume.

(C) Reimbursement to Contractor. In the event that the Contractor is ordered by the Engineer in writing as provided herein to suspend all work under the contract for the reasons specified in Subsections 108.10(A)(2), 108.10(A)(3), or 108.10(A)(5) of the “Suspension of Work” paragraph, the Contractor may be reimbursed for actual direct costs incurred on work at the jobsite, as authorized in writing by the Engineer, including costs expended for the protection of the work. An allowance of 5 percent for indirect categories of delay costs will be paid on any reimbursed direct costs, including extended branch and home-office overhead and delay impact costs. No allowance will be made for anticipated profits. Payment for equipment which is ordered to standby during such suspension of work shall be made as described in Subsection 109.06(H) - Idle and Standby Equipment.

(D) Cost Adjustment. If the performance of all or part of the work is suspended for reasons beyond the control of the Contractor except an adjustment shall be made for any increase in cost of performance of this contract (excluding profit) necessarily caused by such suspension, and the contract modified in writing accordingly.

However, no adjustment to the contract price shall be made for any suspension, delay, or interruption:

(1) For weather related conditions.

(2) To the extent that performance would have been so suspended, delayed, or interrupted by any other cause, including the fault or negligence of the Contractor.

723 (3) Or, for which an adjustment is provided for or excluded under
724 any other provision of this Contract.

725
726 **(E) Claims for Adjustment.** Any adjustment in contra price made shall
727 be determined in accordance with Subsections 104.02 – Changes and
728 104.06 – Methods of Price Adjustment.

729
730 Any claims for such compensation shall be filed in writing with the
731 Engineer within 30 days after the date of the order to resume work or the
732 claim will not be considered. The claim shall conform to the requirements
733 of Subsection 107.15(D) – Making of a Claim. The Engineer will take the
734 claim under consideration, may make such investigations as are deemed
735 necessary and will be the sole judge as to the equitability of the claim. The
736 Engineer’s decision will be final.

737
738 **(F) No Adjustment.** No provision of this clause shall entitle the
739 Contractor to any adjustments for delays due to failure of its surety, the
740 cancellation or expiration of any insurance coverage required by the
741 contract documents, for suspensions made at the request of the Contractor,
742 for any delay required under the contract, for suspensions, either partial or
743 whole, made by the Engineer under Subsection 108.10(A)(4) of the
744 “Suspension of work” paragraph.

745
746 **108.11 Termination of Contract for Cause.**

747
748 **(A) Default.** If the Contractor refuses or fails to perform the work, or any
749 separable part thereof, with such diligence as will assure its completion
750 within the time specified in this contract, or any extension thereof, or
751 commits any other material breach of this contract, and further fails within
752 seven days after receipt of written notice from the Engineer to commence
753 and continue correction of the refusal or failure with diligence and
754 promptness, the Engineer may, by written notice to the Contractor, declare
755 the Contractor in breach and terminate the Contractor’s right to proceed
756 with the work or the part of the work as to which there has been delay or
757 other breach of contract. In such event, the State may take over the work,
758 perform the same to completion, by contract or otherwise, and may take
759 possession of, and utilize in completing the work, the materials, appliances,
760 and plants as may be on the site of the work and necessary therefore.
761 Whether or not the Contractor’s right to proceed with the work is terminated,
762 the Contractor and the Contractor’s sureties shall be liable for any damage
763 to the State resulting from the Contractor’s refusal or failure to complete the
764 work within the specified time.

765
766 **(B) Additional Rights and Remedies.** The rights and remedies of the
767 State provided in this contract are in addition to any other rights and
768 remedies provided by law.

769
770
771
772
773
774
775
776
777
778
779
780
781
782
783
784
785
786
787
788
789
790
791
792
793
794
795
796
797
798
799
800
801
802
803
804
805
806
807
808
809
810
811
812

(C) Costs and Charges. All costs and charges incurred by the State, together with the cost of completing the work under contract, will be deducted from any monies due or which would or might have become due to the Contractor had it been allowed to complete the work under the contract. If such expense exceeds the sum which would have been payable under the contract, then the Contractor and the surety shall be liable and shall pay the State the amount of the excess.

In case of termination, the Engineer will limit any payment to the Contractor to the part of the contract satisfactorily completed at the time of termination. Payment will not be made until the work has satisfactorily been completed and all required documents, including the tax clearance required by Subsection 109.11 – Final Payment are submitted by the Contractor. Termination shall not relieve the Contractor or Surety from liability for liquidated damages.

(D) Erroneous Termination for Cause. If, after notice of termination of the Contractor's right to proceed under this section, it is determined for any reason that good cause did not exist to allow the State to terminate as provided herein, the rights and obligations of the parties shall be the same as, and the relief afforded the Contractor shall be limited to, the provisions contained in Subsection 108.12 – Termination for Convenience.

108.12 Termination For Convenience.

(A) Terminations. The Director may, when the interests of the State so require, terminate this contract in whole or in part, for the convenience of the State. The Director will give written notice of the termination to the Contractor specifying the part of the contract terminated and when termination becomes effective.

(B) Contractor's Obligations. The Contractor shall incur no further obligations in connection with the terminated work and on the date set in the notice of termination the Contractor shall stop work to the extent specified. The Contractor shall also terminate outstanding orders and subcontracts as they relate to the terminated work. The Contractor shall settle the liabilities and claims arising out of the termination of subcontracts and orders connected with the terminated work subject to the State's approval. The Engineer may direct the Contractor to assign the Contractor's right, title, and interest under terminated orders or subcontracts to the State. The Contractor must still complete the work not terminated by the notice of termination and may incur obligations as necessary to do so.

813 **(C) Right to Construction and Goods.** The Engineer may require the
814 Contractor to transfer title and to deliver to the State in the manner and to
815 the extent directed by the Engineer, the following:

816
817 (1) Any completed work.

818
819 (2) Any partially completed construction, goods, materials, parts,
820 tools, dies, jigs, fixtures, drawings, information, and contract rights
821 (hereinafter called "construction material") that the Contractor has
822 specifically produced or specially acquired for the performance of the
823 terminated part of this contract.

824
825 (3) The Contractor shall protect and preserve all property in the
826 possession of the Contractor in which the State has an interest. If
827 the Engineer does not elect to retain any such property, the
828 Contractor shall use its best efforts to sell such property and
829 construction materials for the State's account in accordance with the
830 standards of HRS Chapter 490:2-706.

831
832 **(D) Compensation.**

833
834 (1) The Contractor shall submit a termination claim specifying the
835 amounts due because of the termination for convenience together
836 with cost or pricing data, submitted to the extent required by HAR
837 Subchapter 15, Chapter 3-122. If the Contractor fails to file a
838 termination claim within one year from the effective date of
839 termination, the Engineer may pay the Contractor, if at all, an amount
840 set in accordance with Subsection 108.12(D)(3).

841
842 (2) The Engineer and the Contractor may agree to a settlement
843 provided the Contractor has filed a termination claim supported by
844 cost or pricing data submitted as required and that the settlement
845 does not exceed the total contract price plus settlement costs
846 reduced by payments previously made by the State, the proceeds of
847 any sales of construction, supplies, and construction materials under
848 Subsection 108.12(C)(3), and the proportionate contract price of the
849 work not terminated.

850
851 (3) Absent complete agreement, the Engineer will pay the
852 Contractor the following amounts less any payments previously
853 made under the contract:

854
855 (a) The cost of all contract work performed prior to the
856 effective date of the notice of termination work plus a 5
857 percent markup on the actual direct costs, including amounts
858 paid to subcontractor, less amounts paid or to be paid for

859
860
861
862
863
864
865
866
867
868
869
870
871
872
873
874
875
876
877
878
879
880
881
882
883
884
885
886
887
888
889
890
891
892
893
894
895
896
897
898
899
900
901
902
903
904

completed portions of such work; provided, however, that if it appears that the Contractor would have sustained a loss if the entire contract would have been completed, no markup shall be allowed or included and the amount of compensation shall be reduced to reflect the anticipated rate of loss. No anticipated profit or consequential damage will be due or paid.

(b) Subcontractors shall be paid a markup of 10 percent on their direct job costs incurred to the date of termination. No anticipated profit or consequential damage will be due or paid to any subcontractor. These costs must not include payments made to the Contractor for subcontract work during the contract period.

(c) The total sum to be paid the Contractor shall not exceed the total contract price reduced by the amount of any sales of construction supplies, and construction materials.

(4) Cost claimed, agreed to, or established by the State shall be in accordance with HAR Chapter 3-123.

108.13 Pre-Final and Final Inspections.

(A) Inspection Requirements. Before the Engineer undertakes a final inspection of any work, a pre-final inspection must first be conducted. The Contractor shall notify the Engineer that the work has reached substantial completion and is ready for pre-final inspection.

(B) Pre-Final Inspection. Before notifying the Engineer that the work has reached substantial completion, the Contractor shall inspect the project and test all installed items with all of its subcontractors as appropriate. The Contractor shall also submit the following documents as applicable to the work:

- (1)** All written guarantees required by the contract.
- (2)** Two accepted final field-posted drawings as specified in Section 648 – Field-Posted Drawings;
- (3)** Complete weekly certified payroll records for the Contractor and Subcontractors.
- (4)** Certificate of Plumbing and Electrical Inspection.
- (5)** Certificate of building occupancy as required.

- 905 (6) Certificate of Soil and Wood Treatments.
906
907 (7) Certificate of Water System Chlorination.
908
909 (8) Certificate of Elevator Inspection, Boiler and Pressure Pipe
910 Inspection.
911
912 (9) Maintenance Service Contract and two copies of a list of all
913 equipment installed.
914
915 (10) Current Tax clearance. The contractor will be required to
916 submit an additional tax clearance certificate when the final payment
917 is made.
918
919 (11) And any other final items and submittals required by the
920 contract documents.

921
922 **(C) Procedure.** When in compliance with the above requirements, the
923 Contractor shall notify the Engineer in writing that the project has reached
924 substantial completion and is ready for pre-final inspection.
925

926 The Engineer will then make a preliminary determination as to
927 whether or not the project is substantially complete and ready for pre-final
928 inspection. The Engineer may, in writing, postpone until after the pre-final
929 inspection the Contractor's submittal of any of the items listed in Subsection
930 108.13(B) – Pre-Final Inspection, herein, if in the Engineer's discretion it is
931 in the interest of the State to do so.
932

933 If, in the opinion of the Engineer, the project is not substantially
934 complete, the Engineer will provide the Contractor a punchlist of specific
935 deficiencies in writing which must be corrected or finished before the work
936 will be ready for a pre-final inspection. The Engineer may add to or
937 otherwise modify this punchlist from time to time. The Contractor shall take
938 immediate action to correct the deficiencies and must repeat all steps
939 described above including written notification that the work is ready for pre-
940 final inspection.
941

942 After the Engineer is satisfied that the project appears substantially
943 complete a final inspection shall be scheduled within ten working days after
944 receipt of the Contractor's latest letter of notification that the project is ready
945 for final inspection.
946

947 If, as a result of the pre-final inspection, the Engineer determines the
948 work is not substantially complete, the Engineer will inform the Contractor in
949 writing as to specific deficiencies which must be corrected before the work
950 will be ready for another pre-final inspection. If the Engineer finds the work

951 is substantially complete but finds deficiencies that must be corrected
952 before the work is ready for final inspection, the Engineer will prepare in
953 writing and deliver to the Contractor a punchlist describing such
954 deficiencies. At any time before final acceptance, the Engineer may revoke
955 the determination of substantial completion if the Engineer finds that it was
956 not warranted and will notify the Contractor in writing the reasons therefore
957 together with a description of the deficiencies negating the declaration.
958

959 When the date of substantial completion has been determined by the
960 State, liquidated damages for the failure to complete the punchlist, if due to
961 the State will be assessed in pursuant to Subsection 108.08(B) - Liquidated
962 Damages for Failure to Complete the Punchlist.
963

964 **(D) Punchlist; Clean Up and Final Inspection.** Upon receiving a
965 punchlist after pre-final inspection, the Contractor shall promptly devote all
966 required time, labor, equipment, materials and incidentals to correct and
967 remedy all punchlist deficiencies. The Engineer may add to or otherwise
968 modify this punchlist until substantial completion of the project.
969

970 Before final inspection of the work, the Contractor shall clean all
971 ground occupied by the Contractor in connection with the work of all
972 rubbish, excess materials temporary structures and equipment, shall
973 remove all graffiti and defacement of the work and all parts of the work and
974 the worksite must be left in a neat and presentable condition to the
975 satisfaction of the Engineer.
976

977 Final inspection will occur within ten working days after the
978 Contractor notifies the Engineer in writing that all punchlist deficiencies
979 remaining after the pre-final inspection have been completed and the
980 Engineer concurs. If the Engineer determines that deficiencies still remain
981 at the final inspection, the work will not be accepted and the Engineer will
982 notify the Contractor, in writing, of the deficiencies which shall be corrected
983 and the steps above repeated.
984

985 If the Contractor fails to correct the deficiencies and complete the
986 work by the established or agreed date, the State may correct the
987 deficiencies by whatever method it deems appropriate and deduct the cost
988 from any payments due the Contractor.
989

990 **108.14 Substantial Completion and Final Acceptance.**
991

992 **(A) Substantial Completion.** When the Engineer finds that the
993 Contractor has satisfactorily completed all work for the project in
994 compliance with the contract, with the exception of the planting period and
995 the plant establishment period, the Engineer will notify the Contractor, in
996 writing, of the project's substantial completion, effective as of the date of the

997 final inspection. The substantial completion date shall determine end of
998 contract time and relieve contractor of any additional accumulation of
999 liquidated damages for failure to complete the punchlist.

1000
1001 **(B) Final Acceptance.** When the Engineer finds that the Contractor has
1002 satisfactorily completed all contract work in compliance with the contract
1003 including all plant establishment requirements, and all the materials have
1004 been accepted by the State, the Engineer will issue a Final Acceptance
1005 Letter. The Final Acceptance date shall determine the commencement of
1006 all guaranty periods subject to Subsection 108.16 – Contractor’s
1007 Responsibility for Work; Risk of Loss or Damage.

1008
1009 **108.15 Use of Structure or Improvement.** The State has the right to use the
1010 structure, equipment, improvement, or any part thereof, at any time after it is
1011 considered by the Engineer as available. In the event that the structure,
1012 equipment or any part thereof is used by the State before final acceptance, the
1013 Contractor is not relieved of its responsibility to protect and preserve all the work
1014 until final acceptance.

1015
1016 **108.16 Contractor’s Responsibility for Work; Risk of Loss or Damage.**
1017 Contractor’s Responsibility for Work; Risk of Loss or Damage. Until Substantial
1018 Completion or when the Work is put to its intended use, whichever occurs earlier,
1019 the Contractor shall take every precaution against loss or damage to any part of
1020 the work from any cause whatsoever, whether arising from the performance or
1021 from the non-performance of the work. The Contractor shall rebuild, repair,
1022 restore, and make good all loss or damage to any portion of the work resulting
1023 from any cause before Substantial Completion or when the Work is put to its
1024 intended use, whichever occurs earlier and shall bear the risk and expense
1025 thereof.

1026
1027 **108.17 Guarantee of Work.**

1028
1029 **(1)** Regardless of, and in addition to, any manufacturers’ warranties, all
1030 work and equipment shall be guaranteed by the Contractor against defects
1031 in materials, equipment or workmanship for one year from the date of final
1032 acceptance or as otherwise specified in the contract documents.

1033
1034 **(2)** When the Engineer determines that repairs or replacements of any
1035 guaranteed work and equipment is necessary due to materials, equipment,
1036 or workmanship which are inferior, defective, or not in accordance with the
1037 terms of the contract, the Contractor shall, at no increase in contract price
1038 or contract time, and within five working days of receipt of written notice
1039 from the State, commence to all of the following:

1040
1041 **(a)** Correct all noted defects and make replacements, as directed
1042 by the Engineer, in the equipment and work.

1043
1044
1045
1046
1047
1048
1049
1050
1051
1052
1053
1054
1055
1056
1057
1058
1059
1060
1061
1062
1063
1064
1065
1066
1067
1068
1069
1070
1071
1072
1073
1074
1075
1076
1077
1078
1079
1080
1081
1082
1083
1084
1085
1086
1087
1088

(b) Repair or replace to new or pre-existing condition any damages resulting from such defective materials, equipment or installation thereof.

(3) The State will be entitled to the benefit of all manufacturers and installers warranties that extend beyond the terms of the Contractor's guaranty regardless of whether or not such extended warranty is required by the contract documents. The Contractor shall prepare and submit all documents required by the providers of such warranties to make them effective, and submit copies of such documents to the Engineer. If an available extended warranty cannot be transferred or assigned to the State as the ultimate user, the Contractor shall notify the Engineer who may direct that the warranted items be acquired in the name of the State as purchaser.

(4) If a defect is discovered during a guarantee period, all repairs and corrections to the defective items when corrected shall be guaranteed for a new duration equal to the original full guarantee period. The running of the guarantee period shall be suspended for all other work affected by any defect. The guarantee period for all other work affected by any such defect shall restart for its remaining duration upon confirmation by the Engineer that the deficiencies have been repaired or remedied.

(5) Nothing in this section is intended to limit or affect the State's rights and remedies arising from the discovery of latent defects in the work after the expiration of any guarantee period.

108.18 No Waiver of Legal Rights. The following will not operate or be considered as a waiver of any portion of the contract, or any power herein reserved, or any right to damages provided herein or by law:

- (1) Any payment for, or acceptance of, the whole or any part of the work.
- (2) Any extension of time.
- (3) Any possession taken by the Engineer.

A waiver of any notice requirement or of any noncompliance with the contract will not be held to be a waiver of any other notice requirement or any other noncompliance with the contract.

108.19 Final Settlement of Contract.

(A) **Closing Requirements.** The contract will be considered settled after the project acceptance date and when the following items have been satisfactorily submitted, where applicable:

1089
1090
1091
1092
1093
1094
1095
1096
1097
1098
1099
1100
1101
1102
1103
1104
1105
1106
1107
1108
1109
1110
1111
1112
1113
1114
1115
1116
1117
1118
1119

- (1) All written guarantees required by the contract.
- (2) Complete and certified weekly payrolls for the Contractor and its subcontractor's.
- (3) Certificate of plumbing and electrical inspection.
- (4) Certificate of building occupancy.
- (5) Certificate for soil treatment and wood treatment.
- (6) Certificate of water system chlorination.
- (7) Certificate of elevator inspection, boiler and pressure pipe installation.
- (8) Tax clearance.
- (9) All other documents required by the Contract or by law.

(B) Failure to Meet Closing Requirements. The Contractor shall meet the applicable closing requirements within 60 days from the date of Project Acceptance or the agreed to Punchlist complete date. Should the Contractor fail to comply with these requirements, the Engineer may terminate the contract for cause.”

END OF SECTION 108

1 **SECTION 202 – REMOVAL OF STRUCTURES AND OBSTRUCTIONS**

2
3 Make the following amendments to said Section:

4
5 **(I)** Add the following paragraphs to Subsection **202.03(C) Removal of**
6 **Bridges**, line 118, to read as follows:

7
8 “All concrete and/or reinforcing steel removed shall be recycled by an
9 appropriately licensed or certified concrete recycling facility.”

10
11 **(II)** Amend **202.04 – Measurement** by revising lines 119 to 120 to read as
12 follows:

13
14 **“202.04 Measurement.** Removal of structures and obstructions will be paid on
15 a lump sum basis if the pay unit is specified as lump sum in the proposal.
16 Measurement for payment will not apply if the pay unit is specified as lump sum
17 in the proposal.

18
19 If the proposal provides a contract item for the removal of structures and
20 obstructions, the Engineer will measure the removal of structures and
21 obstructions by the pay unit specified in the proposal.”

22
23 **(III)** Amend **202.05 – Payment** by revising lines 122 to 131 to read as follows:

24
25 **“202.05 Payment.** If the proposal does not show a contract item for the
26 removal of structures and obstructions, the Engineer will not pay for the removal
27 of structures and obstructions separately. The Contractor shall consider them
28 incidental to the various contract items.

29
30 The Engineer will pay for specific items stipulated for removal and
31 disposal at the contract price bid per unit specified in the proposal. The price
32 shall be full compensation for removal and disposal of that items, excavation,
33 backfill, salvage of materials removed. Salvaging of materials removed includes
34 their custody, preservation, storage on the right-of-way. Also, the price shall be
35 full compensation for equipment, tools, labor materials and incidentals necessary
36 to complete the work.

37
38 The Engineer will pay for the following pay item when included in the
39 proposal schedule.

40

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Removal of Existing Bridges	Lump Sum
Removal of Guardrails	Linear Foot

41
42
43
44
45
46

47	Removal of Miscellaneous Walls and Fences	Linear Foot
48		
49	Removal of AC Pavement	Square Yard
50		
51	Removal of Concrete Curb and Gutter	Linear Foot
52		
53	Removal of Concrete Sidewalk	Square Yard
54		
55	Removal of Pavement Striping and Markers	Lump Sum
56		
57	Removal of 5-inch, 24-Inch, 30-Inch and 36-Inch	
58	Water Lines	Linear Foot
59		
60	Removal of gate valves, valve boxes, manholes, reaction	
61	blocks, thrust beams, fire hydrants, concrete jackets,	
62	and any other waterline appurtenances and incidentals	Lump sum
63		
64	Removal of Drainage Culverts and Headwalls	Lump Sum
65		
66	Removal of Excess Excavated Material, including Selected	
67	Material and Borrow Excavated Material	Cubic Yard"
68		
69		
70		
71	END OF SECTION 202	

1 **SECTION 203 – EXCAVATION AND EMBANKMENT**

2
3 Make the following amendments to said Section:

4
5 **(I) Amend 203.03(C)(2)(a) – Maximum Dry Unit Weight** from line 245 to line
6 255 to read as follows:

7
8 **“(a) Maximum Dry Unit Weight.** Test for maximum dry
9 unit weight according to AASHTO T 180, and apply the
10 correction for fraction larger than 3/4 inch. Use Hawaii
11 Test Method HDOT TM 5 for sample preparation of sensitive
12 soils when so designated by the Engineer.”

13
14 **(II) Amend 203.03(C)(3) – Compaction of Cut Areas and Embankments**
15 **With Moisture and Density Tests** from line 261 to line 284 to read as follows:

16
17 **(3) Compaction of Cut Areas and Embankments With**
18 **Moisture and Density Tests.** Prior to shaping and
19 compacting, condition the on-site clayey soil to a moisture
20 content of at least 4 percent above optimum moisture
21 content determined in accordance with AASHTO T 180.
22 Moisture condition embankment material and place in layers
23 not to exceed 8 inches in loose thickness, and compact each
24 layer of material as specified, before placement of next lift.
25 Determine maximum density and relative compaction in
26 accordance with Subsection 203.03(C)(2) – Relative
27 Compaction Test.

28
29 In-situ soil or embankment material contained in prism within
30 2 feet below subgrade and within width of traveled way,
31 auxiliary lane, and shoulder on each side shall have relative
32 compaction of 95 percent or more. When in-situ material
33 within 2 feet below subgrade does not conform to specified
34 moisture condition or the relative compaction, excavate and
35 recompact material until specified moisture condition and
36 relative compaction is achieved.

37
38 Top 6 inches of in-situ material and embankment material
39 below top 2 feet of subgrade, and beyond traveled way,
40 auxiliary lane, and shoulder prism, shall have relative
41 compaction of at least 90 percent. When in-situ material
42 cannot be compacted to 90 percent, provide working
43 platform to allow 90 percent compaction of first lift.”

46 (III) Amend **203.04 – Measurement** by revising lines 345 to 366 to read as
47 follows:

48

49 **“203.04 Measurement.**

50

51 (A) The Engineer will measure roadway excavation per cubic yard.
52 The Engineer will compute quantities of roadway excavation by average
53 end area method and centerline distances. Curvature correction will not
54 be applied to quantities within roadway prism, as indicated in the contract
55 documents. In computing excavation quantities from outside the roadway
56 prism, where roadway centerline is used as a base, curvature correction
57 will be applied when centerline radius is 1,000 feet or less.

58

59 When roadway excavation quantities by average end area method
60 cannot be computed due to the nature of a particular operation or changed
61 conditions, the Engineer will determine and use computation method that
62 will produce an accurate quantity estimate.

63

64 (B) The Engineer will measure imported borrow per cubic yard in
65 accordance with the contract documents. The Engineer will compute
66 quantities of imported borrow incorporated into the work on a volume
67 basis, using average end area method in place at work site.

68

69 (III) Amend **203.05 – Payment** by revising lines 368 to 457 to read as follows:

70

71 **“203.05 Payment.** The Engineer will pay for the accepted pay items listed
72 below at the contract price per pay unit, as shown in the proposal schedule.
73 Payment will be full compensation for the work prescribed in this section and the
74 contract documents.

75

76 The Engineer will pay for each of the following pay items when included in
77 the proposal schedule:

78

79 Pay Item	80 Pay Unit
-------------	-------------

80

81 Roadway Excavation	82 Cubic Yard
-----------------------	---------------

82

83 The Engineer will pay for:

84

85 (1) 15 percent of the contract bid price upon completion of
86 obliterating old roadways and hauling.

87

88 (2) 30 percent of the contract bid price upon completion of
89 preparing subgrade.

90

91 (3) 40 percent of the contract bid price upon completion of placing
92 selected material in final position, rounding of slopes, and using water
93 for compaction.

94
95 (4) 15 percent of the contract bid price upon completion of
96 disposing of surplus excavation material.

97
98
99 Imported Borrow Cubic Yard

100
101 The Engineer will pay for accepted quantities of subexcavation, as
102 roadway excavation at the contract unit price per cubic yard, when ordered by
103 the Engineer, for work prescribed in Subsection 203.03(A)(4) – Subexcavation.
104 Payment will be full compensation for the work prescribed therein and in the
105 contract documents.

106
107 The Engineer will pay for accepted quantities of unlined gutter excavation
108 as roadway excavation at the contract unit price per cubic yard, when gutter is
109 located as follows: within median area of a divided highway; and between
110 roadbed shoulder and adjacent cut slope. Payment will be full compensation for
111 removing and disposing of excavated material; backfilling and compacting; and
112 for the work prescribed in the contract documents.

113
114 The Engineer will not pay for stockpiling selected material, placing
115 selected material in final position, or placing selected material in windrows along
116 tops of roadway slopes for erosion control work, separately and will consider the
117 cost as included in the unit prices for the various excavation contract pay items.
118 The cost is for work prescribed in this section and the contract documents.

119
120 The Engineer will not pay for overhaul separately and will consider the
121 cost as included in the unit prices for the various excavation contract pay items.
122 The cost is for work prescribed in this section and the contract documents.

123
124 The Engineer will not pay for embankment separately and will consider the
125 cost as included in the unit price for roadway excavation. The cost is for work
126 prescribed in this section and the contract documents.

127
128 The Engineer will not pay for Non-Woven Geotextile Fabric (Mirafi 180N or
129 approved equal) separately and will consider the cost as included in the unit price
130 for roadway excavation. The cost is for work prescribed in this section and the
131 contract documents.”

132
133
134
135 **END OF SECTION 203**

1 Amend **Section 209 - TEMPORARY WATER POLLUTION, DUST, AND EROSION**
2 **CONTROL** to read as follows:

3
4
5 **“SECTION 209 - TEMPORARY WATER POLLUTION, DUST, AND EROSION**
6 **CONTROL**

7
8
9 **209.01 Description.** This section describes the following:

10
11 **(A)** Including detailed plans, diagrams, and written Site-Specific Best
12 Management Practices (BMP); constructing, maintaining, and repairing
13 temporary water pollution, dust, and erosion control measures at the project
14 site, including local material sources, work areas and haul roads; removing
15 and disposing hazardous wastes; control of fugitive dust (defined as
16 uncontrolled emission of solid airborne particulate matter from any source
17 other than combustion); and complying with applicable State and Federal
18 permit conditions.

19
20 **(B)** Work associated with construction stormwater, dewatering, and
21 hydrotesting activities and complying with conditions of the National Pollutant
22 Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) permit(s) authorizing discharges
23 associated with construction stormwater, dewatering, and hydrotesting
24 activities.

25
26 **(C)** Potential pollutant identification and mitigation measures are listed in
27 Appendix A for use in the development of the Contractor’s Site-Specific BMP.

28
29 Requirements of this section also apply to construction support
30 activities including concrete or asphalt batch plants, rock crushing plants,
31 equipment staging yards/areas, material storage areas, excavated material
32 disposal areas, and borrow areas located outside the State Right-of-Way.
33 For areas serving multiple construction projects, or operating beyond the
34 completion of the construction project in which it supports, the Contractor
35 shall be responsible for securing the necessary permits, clearances, and
36 documents, and following the conditions of the permits and clearances, at no
37 cost to the State.

38
39 **209.02 Materials.** Comply with applicable materials described in Chapters 2 and
40 3 of the current HDOT “Construction Best Management Practices Field Manual”. In
41 addition, the materials shall comply with the following:

42
43 **(A) Grass.** Grass shall be a quick growing species such as rye grass,
44 Italian rye grass, or cereal grasses. Grass shall be suitable to the area and
45 provide a temporary cover that will not compete later with permanent cover.
46 Alternative grasses are allowable if acceptable to the Engineer.

47 **(B) Fertilizer and Soil Conditioners.** Fertilizer and soil conditioners shall
48 be a standard commercial grade acceptable to the Engineer. Fertilizer shall
49 conform to Subsection 619.02(H)(1) - Commercial Fertilizer.
50

51 **(C) Hydro-mulching.** Hydro-mulching used as a temporary vegetative
52 stabilization measure shall consist of materials in Subsections 209.02(A) -
53 Grass, and 209.02(B) – Fertilizer and Soil Conditioners. Mulches shall be
54 recycled materials including bagasse, hay, straw, wood cellulose bark, wood
55 chips, or other material acceptable to the Engineer. Mulches shall be clean
56 and free of noxious weeds and deleterious materials. Potable water shall
57 meet the requirements of Subsection 712.01 - Water. Submit alternate
58 sources of irrigation water for the Engineer’s acceptance if deviating from
59 712.01 - Water. Installation and other requirements shall be in accordance
60 with portions of Section 641- Hydro-Mulch Seeding including 641.02(D) - Soil
61 and Mulch Tackifier, 641.03(A) – Seeding, and 641.03(B) - Planting Period.
62 Install non-vegetative controls including mulch or rolled erosion control
63 products while the vegetation is being established. Water and fertilize grass.
64 Apply fertilizer as recommended by the manufacturer. Replace grass the
65 Engineer considers unsuitable or sick. Remove and dispose of trash and
66 debris. Remove invasive species. Mow as needed to prevent site or signage
67 obstructions, fire hazard, or nuisance to the public. Do not remove down
68 stream sediment control measures until the vegetation is uniformly
69 established, including no large bare areas, and provides 70 percent of the
70 density of pre-disturbance vegetation. Temporary vegetative stabilization
71 shall not be used longer than one year.
72

73 **(D) Silt Fences.** Comply with ASTM D6462, Standard Practice for Silt
74 Fence Installation.
75

76 Alternative materials or methods to control, prevent, remove and dispose
77 pollution are allowable if acceptable to the Engineer.
78

79 **209.03 Construction.**
80

81 **(A) Preconstruction Requirements.**
82

83 **(1) Water Pollution, Dust, and Erosion Control Meeting.**
84 Schedule a water pollution, dust, and erosion control meeting with the
85 Engineer after Site-Specific BMP is accepted in writing by the
86 Engineer. Meeting shall be scheduled a minimum of 7 calendar days
87 prior to the Start Work Date. Discuss sequence of work, plans and
88 proposals for water pollution, dust, and erosion control.
89

90 **(2) Water Pollution, Dust, and Erosion Control Submittals.**
91 **Submit a Site-Specific BMP Plan within 21 calendar days of date of**
92 **NTP. Refer to Section 108 – Prosecution and Progress for details on**
93 **NTP date.** Submission of complete and acceptable Site-Specific BMP
94 Plan is the sole responsibility of the Contractor and additional contract
95 time will not be issued for delays due to incompleteness. Include the
96 following:

97
98 **(a)** Written description of activities to minimize water
99 pollution and soil erosion into State waters, drainage or sewer
100 systems. BMP shall include the following:

- 101
102 **1.** An identification of potential pollutants and their
103 sources.
- 104
105 **2.** A list of all materials and heavy equipment to be
106 used during construction.
- 107
108 **3.** Descriptions of the methods and devices used to
109 minimize the discharge of pollutants into State waters,
110 drainage or sewer systems.
- 111
112 **4.** Details of the procedures used for the
113 maintenance and subsequent removal of any erosion or
114 siltation control devices.
- 115
116 **5.** Methods of removing and disposing hazardous
117 wastes encountered or generated during construction.
- 118
119 **6.** Methods of removing and disposing concrete and
120 asphalt pavement cutting slurry, concrete curing water,
121 and hydrodemolition water.
- 122
123 **7.** Spill Control and Prevention and Emergency Spill
124 Response Plan.
- 125
126 **8.** Fugitive dust control, including dust from grinding,
127 sweeping, or brooming off operations or combination
128 thereof.
- 129
130 **9.** Methods of storing and handling of oils, paints
131 and other products used for the project.
- 132
133 **10.** Material storage and handling areas, and other
134 staging areas.
- 135

136
137
138
139
140
141
142
143
144
145
146
147
148
149
150
151
152
153
154
155
156
157
158
159
160
161
162
163
164
165
166
167
168
169
170
171
172
173
174
175
176
177
178
179
180
181

- 11. Concrete truck washouts.
- 12. Concrete waste control.

- 13. Fueling and maintenance of vehicles and other equipment.

- 14. Tracking of sediment offsite from project entries and exits.

- 15. Litter management.

- 16. Toilet facilities.

- 17. Other factors that may cause water pollution, dust and erosion control.

(b) Provide plans indicating location of water pollution, dust and erosion control devices; provide plans and details of BMPs to be installed or utilized; show areas of soil disturbance in cut and fill, indicate areas used for construction staging and storage including items (1) through (17) above, storage of aggregate (indicate type of aggregate), asphalt cold mix, soil or solid waste, equipment and vehicle parking, and show areas where vegetative practices are to be implemented. Indicate intended drainage pattern on plans. Include flow arrows. Include separate drawing for each phase of construction that alters drainage patterns. Indicate approximate date when device will be installed and removed.

(c) Construction schedule.

(d) Name(s) of specific individual(s) designated responsible for water pollution, dust, and erosion controls on the project site. Include home, cellular, and business telephone numbers, fax numbers, and e-mail addresses.

(e) Description of fill material to be used.

(f) For projects with an NPDES Permit for Construction Activities, submit information to address all sections in the Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP).

(g) For projects with an NPDES Permit, information required for compliance with the conditions of the Notice of General Permit Coverage (NGPC)/NPDES Permit.

182 (h) Site-Specific BMP Review Checklist. The checklist may
183 be downloaded from HDOT's Stormwater Management
184 website at <http://stormwaterhawaii.com>.
185

186 Date and sign Site-Specific BMP Plan. Keep accepted
187 copy on site or at an accessible location so that it can be made
188 available at the time of an on-site inspection or upon request by
189 the Engineer, HDOT Third-Party Inspector, and/or DOH/EPA
190 Representative. Amendments to the Site-Specific BMP Plan
191 shall be included with original Site-Specific BMP Plan. Modify
192 SWPPP if necessary to conform to revisions. Include date of
193 installation and removal of Site-Specific BMP measures.
194 Obtain written acceptance by the Engineer before
195 implementing revised Site-Specific BMPs in the field.
196

197 Follow the guidelines in the current HDOT "Construction
198 Best Management Practices Field Manual", in developing,
199 installing, and maintaining Site-Specific BMPs for all projects.
200 For any conflicting requirements between the Manual and
201 applicable bid documents, the applicable bid documents will
202 govern. Should a requirement not be clearly described within
203 the applicable bid documents, notify the Engineer immediately
204 for interpretation. For the purposes of clarification "applicable
205 bid documents" include the construction plans, standard
206 specifications, special provisions, Permits, and the SWPPP
207 when applicable.
208

209 Follow Honolulu's City and County "Rules for Soil
210 Erosion Standards and Guidelines" for all projects on Oahu.
211 Use respective Soil Erosion Guidelines for Maui, Kauai and
212 Hawaii projects.
213

214 **(B) Construction Requirements.** Do not begin work until submittals
215 detailed in Subsection 209.03(A)(2) - Water Pollution, Dust, and Erosion
216 Control Submittals are completed and accepted in writing by the Engineer.
217

218 Install, maintain, monitor, repair and replace site-specific BMP
219 measures, such as for water pollution, dust and erosion control; installation,
220 monitoring, and operation of hydrotesting activities; removal and disposal of
221 hazardous waste indicated on plans, concrete cutting slurry, concrete curing
222 water; or hydrodemolition water. Site-Specific BMP measures shall be in
223 place, functional and accepted by HDOT personnel prior to initiating any
224 ground disturbing activities.
225

226 If necessary, furnish and install rain gage in a secure location prior to
227 field work including installation of site-specific BMP. Provide rain gage with
228 a tolerance of at least 0.05 inches of rainfall. Install rain gage on project site
229 in an area that will not deter rainfall from entering the gate opening. Do not
230 install in a location where rain water may splash into rain gage. The rain
231 gage installation shall be stable and plumbed. Maintain rain gage and
232 replace rain gage that is stolen, does not function properly or accurately, is
233 worn out, or needs to be relocated. Do not begin field work until rain gage is
234 installed and Site-Specific BMPs are in place. Rain gage data logs shall be
235 readily available. Submit rain gage data logs weekly to the Engineer.

236
237 Address all comments received from the Engineer.

238
239 Modify and resubmit plans and construction schedules to correct
240 conditions that develop during construction which were unforeseen during
241 the design and pre-construction stages.

242
243 Coordinate temporary control provisions with permanent control
244 features throughout the construction and post-construction period.

245
246 Limit maximum surface area of earth material exposed at any time to
247 300,000 square feet. Do not expose or disturb surface area of earth material
248 (including clearing and grubbing) until BMP measures are installed and
249 accepted in writing by the Engineer. Protect temporarily or permanently
250 disturbed soil surface from rainfall impact, runoff and wind before end of the
251 work day.

252
253 Immediately initiate stabilizing exposed soil areas upon completion of
254 earth disturbing activities for areas permanently or temporarily ceased on any
255 portion of the site. Earth-disturbing activities have permanently ceased when
256 clearing and excavation within any area of the construction site that will not
257 include permanent structures has been completed. Earth-disturbing
258 activities have temporarily ceased when clearing, grading, and excavation
259 within any area of the site that will not include permanent structures will not
260 resume for a period of 14 or more calendar days, but such activities will
261 resume in the future. The term "immediately" is used in this section to define
262 the deadline for initiating stabilization measures. "Immediately" means as
263 soon as practicable, but no later than the end of the next work day, following
264 the day when the earth-disturbing activities have temporarily or permanently
265 ceased.

266
267 For projects with an NPDES Permit for Construction activities:
268

269
270
271
272
273
274
275
276
277
278
279
280
281
282
283
284
285
286
287
288
289
290
291
292
293
294
295
296
297
298
299
300
301
302
303
304
305
306
307
308
309
310
311
312
313
314

(1) For construction areas discharging into **waters not impaired for** nutrients or sediments, complete initial stabilization within 14 calendar days after the temporary or permanent cessation of earth-disturbing activities.

(2) For construction areas discharging into nutrient or sediment impaired waters, complete initial stabilization within 7 calendar days after the temporary or permanent cessation of earth-disturbing activities.

For projects without an NPDES Permit for Construction activities, complete initial stabilization within 14 calendar days after the temporary or permanent cessation of earth-disturbing activities.

Any of the following types of activities constitutes initiation of stabilization:

- (1) Prepping the soil for vegetative or non-vegetative stabilization;
- (2) Applying mulch or other non-vegetative product to the exposed area;
- (3) Seeding or planting the exposed area;
- (4) Starting any of the activities in items (1) – (3) above on a portion of the area to be stabilized, but not on the entire area; and
- (5) Finalizing arrangements to have stabilization product fully installed in compliance with the deadline for completing initial stabilization activities.

Any of the following types of activities constitutes completion of initial stabilization activities:

- (1) For vegetative stabilization, all activities necessary to initially seed or plant the area to be stabilized; and/or
- (2) For non-vegetative stabilization, the installation or application of all such non-vegetative measures.

If the Contractor is unable to meet the deadlines above due to circumstances beyond the Contractor's control, and the Contractor is using vegetative cover for temporary or permanent stabilization, the Contractor may comply with the following stabilization deadlines instead as agreed to by the Engineer:

315 (1) Immediately initiate, and complete within the timeframe shown
316 above, the installation of temporary non-vegetative stabilization
317 measures to prevent erosion;

318
319 (2) Complete all soil conditioning, seeding, watering or irrigation
320 installation, mulching, and other required activities related to the
321 planting and initial establishment of vegetation as soon as conditions
322 or circumstances allow it on the site; and

323
324 (3) Notify and provide documentation to the Engineer the
325 circumstances that prevent the Contractor from meeting the deadlines
326 above for stabilization and the schedule the Contractor will follow for
327 initiating and completing initial stabilization and as agreed to by the
328 Engineer.

329
330 Follow the applicable requirements of the specifications and special
331 provisions including Section 619 Planting and Section 641 Hydro-Mulch
332 Seeding.

333
334 Immediately after seeding or planting the area to be vegetatively
335 stabilized, to the extent necessary to prevent erosion on the seeded or
336 planted area, select, design, and install non-vegetative erosion controls that
337 provide cover (e.g., mulch, rolled erosion control products) to the area while
338 vegetation is becoming established.

339
340 Protect exposed or disturbed surface area with mulches, grass seeds
341 or hydromulch. Spray mulches at a rate of 2,000 pounds per acre. Add
342 tackifier to mix at a rate of 85 pounds per acre. Apply grass seeds at a rate
343 of 125 pounds per acre. For hydromulch, use the ingredients and rates
344 required for mulches and grass seeds. Submit recommendations from a
345 licensed Landscape Architect when deviating from the application rates
346 above.

347
348 Apply fertilizer to mulches, grass seed or hydromulch per
349 manufacturer's recommendations. Submit recommendations from a licensed
350 Landscape Architect when deviating from the manufacturer's
351 recommendations.

352
353 Install velocity dissipation measures when exposing erodible surfaces
354 greater than 15 feet in height.

355
356 BMP measures shall be in place and operational at the end of work
357 day or as required by Section 209.03(B) Construction Requirements.

358

359 Install and maintain either or both stabilized construction entrances
360 and wheel washes to minimize tracking of dirt and mud onto roadways.
361 Restrict traffic to stabilized construction areas only. Clean dirt, mud, or other
362 material tracked onto the road, sidewalk, or other paved area by the end of
363 the same day in which the track-out occurs. Modify stabilized construction
364 entrances to prevent mud from being tracked onto road. Stabilize entire
365 access roads if necessary.

366
367 Chemicals may be used as soil stabilizers for either or both erosion
368 and dust control if acceptable to the Engineer.

369
370 Provide temporary slope drains of rigid or flexible conduits to carry
371 runoff from cuts and embankments. Provide portable flume at the entrance.
372 Shorten or extend temporary slope drains to ensure proper function.

373
374 Protect ditches, channels, and other drainageways leading away from
375 cuts and fills at all times by either:

376
377 (1) Hydro-mulching the lower region of embankments in the
378 immediate area.

379
380 (2) Installing check dams and siltation control devices.

381
382 (3) Other methods acceptable to the Engineer.

383
384 Provide for controlled discharge of waters impounded, directed, or
385 controlled by project activities or erosion control measures.

386
387 Cover exposed surface of materials completely with tarpaulin or
388 similar device when transporting aggregate, soil, excavated material or
389 material that may be source of fugitive dust.

390
391 Cleanup and remove any pollutant that can be attributed to the
392 Contractor.

393
394 Install or modify Site-Specific BMP measures due to change in the
395 Contractor's means and methods, or for omitted condition that should have
396 been allowed for in the accepted Site-Specific BMP or a Site-Specific BMP
397 that replaces an accepted Site-Specific BMP that is not satisfactorily
398 performing. Modifications to Site-Specific BMP measures shall be accepted
399 in writing by the Engineer prior to implementation.

400
401 Properly maintain all Site-Specific BMP measures.

402
403 For projects with an NPDES Permit for Construction Activities:

404

405 (1) For construction areas discharging into nutrient or sediment
406 impaired waters, inspect, prepare a written report, and make repairs
407 to BMP measures at the following intervals:

- 408 (a) Weekly.
- 409
- 410
- 411 (b) Within 24 hours of any rainfall of 0.25 inch or greater
412 which occurs in a 24-hour period.
- 413
- 414 (c) When existing erosion control measures are damaged
415 or not operating properly as required by Site-Specific BMP.
- 416

417 (2) For construction areas discharging to waters not impaired for
418 nutrients or sediments, inspect, prepare a written report, and make
419 repairs to BMP measures at the following intervals:

- 420 (a) Weekly.
- 421
- 422
- 423 (b) When existing erosion control measures are damaged
424 or not operating properly as required by Site-Specific BMP.
- 425

426 For projects without an NPDES Permit for Construction activities,
427 inspect, prepare a written report, and make repairs to BMP measures at the
428 following intervals:

- 429 (a) Weekly.
- 430
- 431
- 432 (b) When existing erosion control measures are damaged
433 or not operating properly as required by Site-Specific BMP.
- 434

435 Temporarily remove, replace or relocate any Site-Specific BMP that
436 must be removed, replaced or relocated due to potential or actual flooding,
437 or potential danger or damage to project or public.

438
439 Maintain records of inspections of Site-Specific BMP work. Keep
440 continuous records for duration of the project. Submit copy of Inspection
441 Report to the Engineer within 24 hours after each inspection.

442
443 The Contractor's designated representative specified in Subsection
444 209.03(A)(2)(d) shall address any Site-Specific BMP deficiencies brought up
445 by the Engineer immediately, including weekends and holidays, and
446 complete work to fix the deficiencies by the close of the next work day if the
447 problem does not require significant repair or replacement, or if the problem
448 can be corrected through routine maintenance. Address any Site-Specific
449 BMP deficiencies brought up by the State's Third-Party Inspector in the
450 timeframe above or as specified in the Consent Decree or MS4 NPDES

451 Permit, whichever is more stringent. The Consent Decree timeframe
452 requirement applies statewide. The MS4 NPDES Permit only applies to
453 Oahu. In this section, “immediately” means the Contractor shall take all
454 reasonable measures to minimize or prevent discharge of pollutants until a
455 permanent solution is installed and made operational. If a problem is
456 identified at a time in the day in which it is too late to initiate repair, initiation
457 of repair shall begin on the following work day. When installation of a new
458 pollution prevention control or a significant repair is needed, complete
459 installation or repair no later than 7 calendar days from the time of
460 notification/Contractor discovery. Notify the Engineer and document why it
461 is infeasible to complete the installation or repair within 7 calendar days and
462 complete the work as soon as practicable and as agreed to by the Engineer.
463 Address Site-Specific BMP deficiencies discovered by the Contractor within
464 the timeframe above. The Contractor’s failure to satisfactorily address these
465 Site-Specific BMP deficiencies, the Engineer reserves the right to employ
466 outside assistance or use the Engineer’s own labor forces to provide
467 necessary corrective measures. The Engineer will charge the Contractor
468 such incurred costs plus any associated project engineering costs. The
469 Engineer will make appropriate deductions from the Contractor’s monthly
470 progress estimate. Failure to apply Site-Specific BMP measures may result
471 in one or more of the following: assessment of liquidated damages,
472 suspension, or cancellation of Contract with the Contractor being fully
473 responsible for all additional costs incurred by the State.

474
475 **(C) Discharges of Storm Water Associated with Construction**
476 **Activities.** If work includes disturbance of one acre or more, an NPDES
477 Permit authorizing Discharges of Storm Water Associated with Construction
478 Activity (CWB-NOI Form C) or Individual Permit authorizing storm water
479 discharges associated with construction activity is required from the
480 Department of Health Clean Water Branch (DOH-CWB).

481
482 Do not begin construction activities until all required conditions of the
483 permit are met and submittals detailed in Subsection 209.03(A)(2) – Water
484 Pollution, Dust, and Erosion Control Submittals are completed and accepted
485 in writing by the Engineer.

486
487 **(D) Discharges Associated with Hydrotesting Activities.** If
488 hydrotesting activities require effluent discharge into State waters or drainage
489 systems, an NPDES Hydrotesting Waters Permit (CWB-NOI Form F) or
490 Individual Permit authorizing discharges associated with hydrotesting from
491 DOH-CWB is required from the DOH-CWB.

492
493 Do not begin hydrotesting activities until the DOH-CWB has issued an
494 Individual NPDES Permit or Notice of General Permit Coverage (NGPC).
495 Conduct Hydrotesting operations in accordance with the conditions of the
496 permit or NGPC.

497 **(E) Discharges Associated with Dewatering Activities.** If dewatering
498 activities require effluent discharge into State waters or drainage systems, an
499 NPDES Dewatering Permit (CWB-NOI Form G) or Individual Permit
500 authorizing discharges associated with dewatering from DOH-CWB is
501 required from the DOH-CWB.
502

503 Do not begin dewatering activities until the DOH-CWB has issued an
504 Individual NPDES Permit or Notice of General Permit Coverage (NGPC).
505 Conduct dewatering operations in accordance with the conditions of the
506 permit or NGPC.
507

508 **(F) Solid Waste.** Submit the Solid Waste Disclosure Form for
509 Construction Sites to the Engineer within 30 calendar days of contract
510 certification date. Keep copies on-site or at an accessible location so that it
511 can be made available at the time of an on-site inspection or upon request
512 by the Engineer, HDOT Third-Party Inspector, and/or DOH/EPA
513 Representative. Provide a copy of all the disposal receipts from the facility
514 permitted by the Department of Health to receive solid waste to the Engineer
515 by the last day of each month. Provide documentation from any intermediary
516 facility where solid waste is handled or processed, haul tags, or any
517 documentation as requested by the Engineer. Notify Engineer prior to
518 removal of material from site. All material generated from the project and
519 taken off site shall be considered to be solid waste. If the Contractor elects
520 to reclassify material as inert fill to be reused, DOH HEER testing guidance
521 shall be followed. No material generated from this project shall be classified
522 as inert fill material for reuse without testing, obtaining required
523 approvals/permits, providing disposal locations/quantities, and obtaining
524 prior written approval from the Engineer. The Contractor shall indemnify the
525 State of all violations of solid waste handling and disposal. Failure to comply
526 with these requirements may result in fines or liquidated damages in
527 accordance with Special Provisions Section 209 - Temporary Water
528 Pollution, Dust, and Erosion Control and HDOT's Enforcement Response
529 Plan.
530

531 **(G) Construction BMP Training.** The Contractor's representative
532 responsible for development of the Site-Specific BMP Plan and
533 implementation of Site-Specific BMPs in the field shall attend the State's
534 Construction Best Management Practices Training. The Contractor shall
535 keep training logs updated and readily available.
536

537 **209.04 Measurement.**

538

539 **(A)** Installation, maintenance, monitoring, and removal of BMP will be paid
540 on a lump sum basis. Measurement for payment will not apply.
541

542 **(B)** The Engineer will only measure additional water pollution, dust and

543 erosion control required and requested by the Engineer on a force account
544 basis in accordance with Subsection 109.06 – Force Account Provisions and
545 Compensation.
546

547 **209.05 Payment.** The Engineer will pay for accepted pay items listed below at
548 contract price per pay unit, as shown in the proposal schedule. Payment will be full
549 compensation for work prescribed in this section and contract documents.
550

551 The Engineer will pay for each of the following pay items when included in
552 proposal schedule:
553

554 Pay Item	555 Pay Unit
556 Installation, Maintenance, Monitoring, and Removal of BMP	557 Lump Sum

558 Payment for all work prescribed in this section including: submittals,
559 sampling, testing, reporting, dust control measures, installation, maintenance,
560 monitoring, implementation of the SWPPP, and removal of BMP's shall be paid for
561 under the lump sum pay item shown in the proposal schedule. This includes
562 payment for installation or modification of Site-Specific BMP measures due to
563 change in the Contractor's means and methods, or for omitted condition that
564 should have been allowed for in the contractor's accepted SWPPP or a Site-
565 Specific BMP that requires repair or replacement of an accepted Site-Specific
566 BMP that is not satisfactorily performing.
567

568 Additional Water Pollution, Dust, and Erosion Control	569 Force Account
-----------------------------------------------------------	-------------------

570 An estimated amount for force account is allocated in proposal schedule
571 under 'Additional Water Pollution, Dust, and Erosion Control', but actual amount to
572 be paid will be the sum shown on accepted force account records, whether this sum
573 be more or less than estimated amount allocated in proposal schedule. The
574 Engineer will pay for BMP measures requested by the Engineer that are beyond the
575 scope of the original contract work on a force account basis. No progress payment
576 will be authorized until the Engineer accepts in writing Site-Specific BMP or when
577 the Contractor fails to maintain project site in accordance with accepted BMP.
578

579 For all citations or fines received by the Department for non-compliance,
580 including compliance with NPDES Permit conditions, the Contractor shall reimburse
581 State within 30 calendar days for full amount of outstanding cost the State has
582 incurred, or the Engineer will deduct cost from progress payment. The Engineer will
583 not pay for work to repair or to compensate for damages caused by dust or water.
584 The Engineer may assess liquidated damages up to \$27,500 per day for non-
585 compliance of each BMP requirement and all other requirements in this section in
586 accordance with HDOT's Enforcement Response Plan.

587 **Appendix A**

588

589 The following list identifies potential pollutant sources and corresponding
590 BMPs used to mitigate the pollutants. Each BMP is referenced to the corresponding
591 section of the current HDOT Construction Best Management Practices Field Manual
592 or appropriate Supplemental Sheets. The Manual may be obtained from the HDOT
593 Statewide Stormwater Management Program Website at
594 <http://www.stormwaterhawaii.com/resources/contractors-and-consultants/> under
595 Construction Best Management Practices Field Manual. Supplemental BMP sheets
596 are located at [http://www.stormwaterhawaii.com/resources/contractors-and-](http://www.stormwaterhawaii.com/resources/contractors-and-consultants/storm-water-pollution-prevention-plan-swppp/)
597 [consultants/storm-water-pollution-prevention-plan-swppp/](http://www.stormwaterhawaii.com/resources/contractors-and-consultants/storm-water-pollution-prevention-plan-swppp/) under Concrete Curing
598 and Irrigation Water.

599

Pollutant Source	Appropriate Site-Specific BMP to be Implemented	BMP Requirements
<p>Construction debris, green waste, general litter</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Separate contaminated clean up materials from construction and demolition (C&D) wastes. • Provide waste containers (e.g., dumpster or trash receptacle) of sufficient size and number to contain construction and domestic wastes. • Inspect construction waste and recycling areas regularly. • Schedule solid waste collection regularly. • Schedule recycling activities based on construction/demolition phases. • Empty waste containers weekly or when they are two-thirds full, whichever is sooner. • Do not allow containers to overflow. Clean up immediately if they do. • On work days, clean up and dispose of waste in designated waste containers. • See Solid Waste Management Section SM-6 for additional requirements. • Provide Storm Drain Inlet Protection and/or Perimeter Sediment Controls as applicable. • <i>Collect and dispose of all waste materials in trash dumpsters. Place dumpsters, with secure watertight lids, away from storm water conveyances and drains, in a covered materials storage area.</i> • <i>Dispose of construction and non- construction solid waste in accordance with State DOH regs.</i> • <i>Load removed non- recyclable vegetation directly onto trucks; cover and transport to a licensed facility</i> 	<p>See Solid Waste Management Section SM-6. <i>Storm Drain Inlet Protection SC-1, and Perimeter Sediment Controls where applicable.</i></p>

Pollutant Source	Appropriate Site-Specific BMP to be Implemented	BMP Requirements
<p>Materials associated with the operation and maintenance of equipment, such as oil, fuel, and hydraulic fluid leakage</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use off-site wash racks, repair and maintenance facilities, and fueling sites when practical. • Designate bermed wash area if cleaning on site is necessary. • Place drip pans or drop cloths under vehicles and equipment to absorb spills or leaks. • Provide an ample supply of readily available spill cleanup materials. • Clean up spills immediately, using dry cleanup methods where possible, and dispose of used materials properly. • Do not clean surfaces or spills by hosing the area down. • Eliminate the source of the spill to prevent a discharge or a continuation of an ongoing discharge. • Inspect on-site vehicles and equipment regularly and immediately repair leaks. • Regularly inspect fueling areas and storage tanks. • Train employees on proper maintenance and spill practices and procedures and fueling and cleanup procedures. • Store diesel fuel, oil, hydraulic fluid, or other petroleum products or other chemicals in water-tight containers and provide cover or secondary containment. • Do not remove original product labels and comply with manufacturer's labels for proper disposal. • Dispose of containers only after all the product has been used. • Dispose of or recycle oil or oily wastes according to Federal, State, and Local requirements. • Store soaps, detergents, or solvents under cover or other means to prevent contact with rainwater. • See Vehicle and Equipment Cleaning, Maintenance, and Refueling, Sections SM-11, SM-12, and SM-13 and Material Storage and Handling Section SM-2 for additional requirements. 	<p>See Vehicle and Equipment Cleaning, Maintenance, and Refueling, Sections SM-11, SM-12, and SM-13, and Material Storage and Handling, Section SM-2, and Spill Prevention and Control SM-10.</p>

Pollutant Source	Appropriate Site-Specific BMP to be Implemented	BMP Requirements
Soil erosion from the disturbed areas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Provide Soil Stabilization, Slope Protection, Storm Drain Inlet Protection SC-1, Perimeter Controls and Sediment Barriers, Sediment Basins and Detention Ponds, Check Dams SC-3 ,Level Spreader EC-6, Paving Operations SM-20, Construction Roads and Parking Area Stabilization SC-10, Controlling Storm Water Flowing Onto and Through the Project, Post-Construction BMPs, and Non-Structural BMPs (Construction BMP Training SM-1, Scheduling SM-14, Location of Potential Sources of Sediment SM-15, Preservation of Existing Vegetation SM-17). • Delineate, and clearly mark off, with flags, tape, or other similar marking device all natural buffer areas defined in the SWPPP. • Preserve native topsoil where practicable. • In areas where vegetative stabilization will occur, restrict vehicle/equipment use in areas to avoid soil compaction or condition soil to promote vegetative growth. • For Storm Drain Inlet Protection, clean, or remove and replace, the protection measures as sediment accumulates, the filter becomes clogged, and/or performance is compromised. • Where there is evidence of sediment accumulation adjacent to the inlet protection measure, remove the deposited sediment by the end of the same day in which it is found or by the end of the following work day if removal by the same day is not feasible. • Sediment basins shall be designed and maintained in accordance with HAR Chapter 11-55. • Minimize disturbance on steep slopes (Greater than 15% in grade). • If disturbance of steep slopes are unavoidable, phase disturbances and use stabilization techniques designed for steep grades. • For temporary drains and swales use velocity dissipation devices within and at the outlet to minimize erosive flow velocities. 	<p>Soil Stabilization</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. SM-22 <p>Topsoil Management</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. EC-12 <p>Seeding and Planting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. EC-14 <p>Mulching</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. EC-11 <p>Geotextiles and Mats</p> <p>Slope Protection</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. EC-12 <p>Seeding and Planting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. EC-14 <p>Mulching</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. EC-11 <p>Geotextiles and Mats</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. EC-4 <p>Slope Roughening, Terracing, and Rounding</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5. EC-7 <p>Slope Drains and Subsurface Drains</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 6. EC-9 <p>Slope Interceptor or Diversion Ditches/Berms</p> <p>SC-1 Storm Drain Inlet Protection</p>

Pollutant Source	Appropriate Site-Specific BMP to be Implemented	BMP Requirements
		<p><i>Perimeter Controls and Sediment Barriers</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. SC-7 Silt Fence <i>or Filter Fabric Fence</i> 2. SC-2 Vegetated Filter Strips and Buffers 3. SC-6 Compost Filter Berm/Sock 4. SC-8 Sandbag Barrier 5. SC-9 Brush or Rock Filter <p><i>Sediment Basins and Detention Ponds</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. SC-4 Sediment Trap 2. SC-5 Sediment Basin <p>SC-3 Check Dams</p> <p>EC-6 Level Spreader SM-20 Paving Operations SC-10 Construction Roads and Parking Area Stabilization</p>

604

Pollutant Source	Appropriate Site-Specific BMP to be Implemented	BMP Requirements
		<p>Controlling Storm Water Flowing onto and Through the Project</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. EC-3 Run-On Diversion 2. EC-5 Earth Dike, Swales and Ditches <p>Post Construction BMPs</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. EC-2 Flared Culvert End Sections 2. EC-10 Rip-Rap and Gabion Inflow Protection 3. EC-8 Outlet Protection and Velocity Dissipation Devices 4. SM-22 Topsoil Management <p>Non-Structural BMPs</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. SM-1 Construction BMP Training 2. SM-14 Scheduling 3. SM-15 Location of Potential Sources of Sediment 4. SM-17 Preservation of Existing Vegetation

Pollutant Source	Appropriate Site-Specific BMP to be Implemented	BMP Requirements
Sediment from soil stockpiles	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Locate stockpiles a minimum of 50 feet or as far as practicable from concentrated runoff or outside of any natural buffers identified on the SWPPP. • Place bagged materials on pallets and under cover. • Provide physical diversion to protect stockpiles from concentrated runoff. • Cover stockpiles with plastic or comparable material when practicable. • Place silt fence, fiber filtration tubes, or straw wattles around stockpiles. • Do not hose down or sweep soil or sediment accumulated on pavement or other impervious surfaces into any storm water conveyance (unless connected to a sediment basin, sediment trap, or similarly effective control), storm drain inlet, or state water. • Unless infeasible, contain and securely protect stockpiles from the wind. • Provide Storm Drain Inlet Protection and/or Perimeter Sediment Controls as applicable. See Stockpile Management Section SM-3 for additional requirements. 	See Stockpile Management Section SM-3. Storm Drain Inlet Protection SC-1, and Perimeter Sediment Controls where applicable.
Emulsified asphalt or prime/tack coat	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Provide training for employees and contractors on proper material delivery and storage practices and procedures. • Restrict paving operations during wet weather to prevent paving materials from being discharged. • Use asphalt emulsions such as prime coat when possible. • Protect drain inlet structures and manholes during application of tack coat, seal coat, slurry seal, and fog seal. • Keep ample supplies of drip pans and absorbent materials on site. • Inspect inlet protection devices. • See Material Storage and Handling Section SM-2 and Paving Operations Section SM-20 for additional requirements. • Provide Storm Drain Inlet Protection and/or Perimeter Sediment Controls as applicable. 	See Material Storage and Handling Section SM-2, and Stockpile Management Section SM-3, Paving Operations Section SM-20, Storm Drain Inlet Protection SC-1, and Perimeter Sediment Controls where applicable.

Pollutant Source	Appropriate Site-Specific BMP to be Implemented	BMP Requirements
<p>Materials associated with painting, such as paint and paint wash solvent</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hazardous chemicals shall be well-labeled and stored in original containers. • Keep ample supply of cleanup materials on site. • Dispose container only after all of the product has been used. • Remove as much paint from brushes on painted surface. • Rinse from water-based paints shall be discharged into the sanitary sewer system where possible. If not, direct all wastewater into a leak-proof container or leak-proof pit. The container or pit must be designed so that no overflows can occur due to inadequate sizing or precipitation. • Locate on-site wash area a minimum of 50 feet away or as far as practicable from storm drain inlets, open drainage facilities, or water bodies. • Do not dump liquid wastes into the storm drainage system. • Filter and re-use solvents and thinners. • Dispose of oil-based paints and residue as a hazardous waste. • Ensure collection, removal, and disposal of hazardous waste complies with regulations. • Immediately clean up spills and leaks. • Properly store paints, solvents, and epoxy compounds. • Properly store and dispose waste materials generated from painting and structure repair and construction activities. • Mix paints in a covered and contained area, when possible, to minimize adverse impacts from spills. • Do not apply traffic paint or thermoplastic if rain is forecasted. • See Material Storage and Handling Use SM-2, Hazardous Materials and Waste Management Section SM-9, Spill Prevention and Control Section SM-10, and Structure Construction and Painting Section SM-21 for additional requirements. <p>Provide Storm Drain Inlet Protection and/or Perimeter Sediment Controls as applicable.</p>	<p>See Material Storage and Handling Use Section SM-2, Stockpile Management Section SM-3, Hazardous Materials and Waste Management Section SM-9, Waste Management, Spill Prevention and Control Section SM-10, and Structure Construction and Painting Section SM-21, Storm Drain Inlet Protection SC-1, and Perimeter Sediment Controls where applicable.</p>

Pollutant Source	Appropriate Site-Specific BMP to be Implemented	BMP Requirements
<p><i>Industrial chemicals, fertilizers, and/or pesticides</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Hazardous chemicals shall be well-labeled and stored in original containers.</i> • <i>Keep ample supply of cleanup materials on site.</i> • <i>Clean up spills immediately, using dry clean-up methods where possible, and dispose of used materials properly.</i> • <i>Do not clean surfaces or spills by hosing the area down.</i> • <i>Eliminate the source of the spill to prevent a discharge or a furtherance of an ongoing discharge.</i> • <i>Dispose container only after all of the product has been used.</i> • <i>Retain a complete set of safety data sheets (formerly MSDS) on site.</i> • <i>Store industrial chemicals in water-tight containers and provide either cover or secondary containment.</i> • <i>Provide cover when storing fertilizers or pesticides to prevent these chemicals from coming into contact with rainwater.</i> • <i>Restrict amount of pesticide prepared to quantity necessary for the current application.</i> • <i>Do not apply fertilizers or pesticides during or just before a rain event.</i> • <i>Do not apply to stormwater conveyance channels with flowing water.</i> • <i>Comply with fertilizer and pesticide manufacturer's recommended usage and disposal instructions. Document departures from manufacturer's specifications in Attachment J.</i> • <i>Apply fertilizers at the appropriate time of year for the location, and preferably timed to coincide as closely as possible to the period of maximum vegetation uptake and growth.</i> • <i>Follow federal, state, and local laws regarding fertilizer application.</i> • <i>Do not dispose of toxic liquid wastes (solvents, used oils, and paints) or chemicals (additives, acids, and curing compounds) in dumpsters allocated for construction debris.</i> 	<p>See <i>Material Storage and Handling</i> Use Section SM-2, <i>Stockpile Management</i> Section SM-3, and <i>Hazardous Materials and Waste Management</i> Section SM-9, and <i>Spill Prevention and Control</i> SM-10</p>

Pollutant Source	Appropriate Site-Specific BMP to be Implemented	BMP Requirements
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Ensure collection, removal, and disposal of hazardous waste complies with regulations. Hazardous waste that cannot be reused or recycled shall be disposed of by a licensed hazardous waste hauler.</i> • <i>See Material Storage and Handling Use SM-2, and Hazardous Materials and Waste Management Section SM-9 for additional requirements.</i> 	
<p><i>Hazardous waste (Batteries, Solvents, Treated Lumber, etc.)</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Do not dispose of toxic materials in dumpsters allocated for construction debris.</i> • <i>Ensure collection, removal, and disposal of hazardous waste complies with regulations.</i> • <i>Hazardous waste that cannot be reused or recycled shall be disposed of by a licensed hazardous waste hauler.</i> • <i>Segregate and recycle wastes from vehicle/equipment maintenance activities such as used oil or oil filters, greases, cleaning solutions, antifreeze, automotive batteries, and hydraulic and transmission fluids.</i> • <i>Store waste in sealed containers, which are constructed of suitable materials to prevent leakage and corrosion, and which are labeled in accordance with applicable Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA) requirements and all other applicable federal, state, and local requirements.</i> • <i>All containers stored outside shall be kept away from surface waters and within appropriately sized secondary containment (e.g., spill berms, decks, spill containment pallets). Provide cover if possible.</i> • <i>Clean up spills immediately, using dry clean-up methods where possible, and dispose of used materials properly.</i> • <i>Do not clean surfaces or spills by hosing the area down.</i> • <i>Eliminate the source of the spill to prevent a discharge or a continuation of an ongoing discharge.</i> 	<p><i>See Hazardous Materials and Waste Management Section SM-9 and Vehicle and Equipment Maintenance SM-12</i></p>

Pollutant Source	Appropriate Site-Specific BMP to be Implemented	BMP Requirements
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ensure collection, removal, and disposal of hazardous waste complies with manufacturer's recommendations and is in compliance with federal, state, and local requirements. • See Hazardous Materials and Waste Management Section SM-9 and Vehicle and Equipment Management, Vehicle and Equipment Maintenance SM-12 for additional requirements. 	
Metals and Building Materials	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inspect construction waste and recycling areas regularly. • Schedule solid waste collection regularly. • If building materials or metals are stored on site (such as rebar or galvanized poles) store under cover under tarps or in containers. • Minimize the amount of material stored on site. • Do not stockpile uncovered metals or other building materials in close proximity to discharge points. • See Solid Waste Management Section SM-6 for additional requirements. 	See Solid Waste Management Section SM-6
Contaminated Soil	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • See Waste Management, Contaminated Soil Management Section SM-8 and/or Hazardous Materials and Waste Management Section SM-9 for additional requirements. • At minimum contain contaminated material soil by surrounding with impermeable lined berms or cover exposed contaminated material with plastic sheets. 	See Waste Management, Contaminated Soil Management Section SM-8 and/or Hazardous Materials and Waste Management Section SM-9

Pollutant Source	Appropriate Site-Specific BMP to be Implemented	BMP Requirements
<i>Fugitive Dust Control and Dust Control Water</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Do not over spray water for dust control purposes which will result in runoff from the area. • Apply water as conditions require. • Washing down of debris or dirt into drainage, sewage systems, or State waters is not allowed. • <i>Minimize exposed areas through the schedule of construction activities.</i> • <i>Utilize vegetation, mulching, sprinkling, and stone/gravel layering to quickly stabilize exposed soil.</i> • <i>Direct construction vehicle traffic to stabilized roadways.</i> • <i>Cover dump trucks hauling material from the site with a tarpaulin.</i> <p>See Dust Control Section SM-19 for additional requirements.</p>	See Dust Control Section SM-19
<i>Concrete Truck Wash Water</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disposal of concrete truck wash water via percolation is prohibited. • Wash concrete-coated vehicles or equipment off-site or in the designated wash area. • Locate on-site wash area a minimum of 50 feet away or as far as practicable from storm drain inlets, open drainage facilities, or water bodies. • Runoff from the on-site concrete wash area shall be contained in a temporary pit or level bermed area where the concrete can set. • Design the area so that no overflow can occur due to inadequate wash area sizing or precipitation. • The temporary pit shall be lined with plastic to prevent seepage of wash water into the ground. • Allow wash water to evaporate or collect wash water and all concrete debris in a concrete washout system bin. • Do not dump liquid wastes into storm drainage system. • Dispose of liquid and solid concrete wastes in compliance with federal, state, and local standards. • See Waste Management, Concrete <i>Wash and Waste Management</i> Section SM-4 for additional requirements. 	See Waste Management, Concrete <i>Wash and Waste Management</i> Section SM-4

Pollutant Source	Appropriate Site-Specific BMP to be Implemented	BMP Requirements
Sediment Track-Out	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Include Stabilized Construction Entrance at all points that exit onto paved roads.</i> • <i>A sediment trapping device is required if a wash rack is used in conjunction with the stabilized construction entrance/exit.</i> • <i>The pavement shall not be cleaned by washing down the street.</i> • <i>If sweeping is ineffective or it is necessary to wash the streets, wash water must be contained either by construction of a sump, diverting the water to an acceptable disposal area, or vacuuming the wash water.</i> • <i>Use BMPs for adjacent drainage structures.</i> • <i>Remove sediment tracked onto the street by the end of the day in which the track-out occurs.</i> • <i>Restrict vehicle use to properly designated exit points.</i> • <i>Include additional BMPs that remove sediment prior to exit when minimum dimensions cannot be met.</i> <p><i>See Stabilized Construction Entrance/Exit Section SC-11 for additional requirements.</i></p>	See Stabilized Construction Entrance/Exit Section SC-11
Irrigation Water	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Consider irrigation requirements.</i> • <i>Where possible, avoid species which require irrigation.</i> • <i>Design, timing and application methods of irrigation water to eliminate the runoff of excess irrigation water into the storm water drainage system.</i> <p><i>See Seeding and Planting Section EC-12 and California Stormwater BMP Handbook SD-12 Efficient Irrigation included in SWPPP Attachment A for additional requirements.</i></p>	See Seeding and Planting Section EC-12 and California Stormwater BMP Handbook SD-12 Efficient Irrigation
Hydrotesting Effluent	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>If work includes removing, relocation or installing waterlines, and Contractor elects to flush waterline or discharge hydrotesting effluent into State waters or drainage systems, the Contractor shall prepare and obtain HDOT acceptance of a NOI/NPDES Permit Form F application for HDOT submittal to DOH CWB at least 30 calendar days prior to the start of Hydrotesting Activities if necessary. Site specific BMPs will be included in the NOI/NPDES Permit Form F submittal.</i> 	Site specific BMPs will be included in the NOI/NPDES Permit Form F submittal.

Pollutant Source	Appropriate Site-Specific BMP to be Implemented	BMP Requirements
<i>Dewatering Effluent</i>	<i>If excavation or backfilling operations require dewatering, and Contractor elects to discharge dewatering effluent into State waters or existing drainage systems, Contractor shall prepare and obtain HDOT acceptance of a NOI/NPDES Permit Form G application for HDOT submittal to DOH CWB at least 30 calendar days prior to the start of Dewatering Activities if necessary. See Site Planning and General Practices, Dewatering Operations Section SM-18 for additional requirements.</i>	<i>See Dewatering Operations SM-18. Site specific BMPs will be included in the NOI/NPDES Permit Form G submittal.</i>
<i>Saw-cutting Slurry</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Saw cut slurry shall be removed from the site by vacuuming.</i> • <i>Provide storm drain protection during saw cutting. See Paving Operations Section SM-20 for additional requirements.</i> <i>Provide Storm Drain Inlet Protection and/or Perimeter Sediment Controls as applicable.</i>	<i>See Paving Operations Section SM-20, Storm Drain Inlet Protection SC-1, Perimeter sediment controls where applicable</i>
<i>Concrete Curing Water</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Avoid overspraying of curing compounds.</i> • <i>Apply an amount of compound that covers the surface, but does not allow any runoff of the compound.</i> <i>See California Stormwater BMP Handbook NS-12 Concrete Curing included in SWPPP Attachment A for additional requirements.</i>	<i>See California Stormwater BMP Handbook NS-12 Concrete Curing</i>

Pollutant Source	Appropriate Site-Specific BMP to be Implemented	BMP Requirements
Plaster Waste Water	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Direct all wastewater into a leak-proof container or leak-proof pit. The container or pit must be designed so that no overflows can occur due to inadequate sizing or precipitation. • Locate on-site wash area a minimum of 50 feet away or as far as practicable from storm drain inlets, open drainage facilities, or water bodies. • Any significant residual materials remaining on the ground after the completion of construction shall be removed and properly disposed. If the residual materials contaminate the soil, then the contaminated soil shall also be removed and properly disposed of. • Plaster waste water shall not be allowed to flow into drainage structures or State waters. See Material, Storage and Handling Use SM-2, Stockpile Management Use Section SM-3, and Hazardous Materials and Waste Management Section SM-9 for additional requirements. 	See Material, Storage and Handling Use Section SM-2, Stockpile Management Use Section SM-3, and Hazardous Materials and Waste Management Section SM-9
Water-Jet Wash Water	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For Water-Jet Wash Water used to clean vehicles, use off site wash racks or commercial washing facilities when practical. • See Vehicle and Equipment Cleaning Section SM-11 for additional information. • For Water-Jet Wash Water used to clean impervious surfaces, the runoff shall not be allowed to flow into drainage structures or State Waters. 	See Vehicle and Equipment Cleaning Section SM-11
Sanitary/Septic Waste	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Locate Sanitary facilities in a convenient place away from drainage facilities. • Position sanitary facilities so they are secure and will not be tipped over or knocked down. • Wastewater shall not be discharged to the ground or buried. • A licensed service provider shall maintain sanitary/septic facilities in good working order. • Schedule regular waste collection by a licensed transporter. • See Sanitary Waste Section SM-7 for additional requirements. 	See Sanitary Waste Section SM-7.

615
616
617

“

END OF SECTION 209

**7101A-01-20
209-28a**

r06/08/22

1 **Amend Section 401 – HOT MIX ASPHALT (HMA) PAVEMENT to read as**
2 **follows:**

3
4 **“SECTION 401 – HOT MIX ASPHALT (HMA) PAVEMENT**

5
6 **401.01 Description.** This section describes furnishing and placing dense graded
7 HMA pavement (herein referred to as HMA) on a prepared surface.

8
9 **401.02 Materials.**

10
11 Asphalt Cement (PG 64-16) 702.01(A)

12
13 Use for non-surface mixes, unless otherwise specified in the project documents.

14
15 Asphalt Cement (PG 64E-22) 702.01(B)

16
17 Use for all surface mixes, except for on Lanai and Molokai, and unless otherwise
18 specified in the project documents. Polymer modified asphalt (PMA) pavement
19 refers to asphalt mix using PG 64E-22, unless otherwise indicated.

20
21 Emulsified Asphalt 702.04

22
23 Warm Mix Asphalt Additive 702.06

24
25 Aggregate for Hot Mix Asphalt Pavement 703.09

26
27 Filler 703.15

28
29 Hydrated Lime or a liquid anti-strip approved by the engineer 712.03

30
31 **(A) General.** HMA pavement shall be plant mixed and shall include
32 mixture of aggregate and asphalt binder and may include reclaimed asphalt
33 pavement (RAP) or filler, or both.

34
35 The manufacture of HMA may include warm mix asphalt (WMA)
36 processes in accordance with these specifications. WMA processes include
37 combinations of organic additives, chemical additives, and foaming.

38
39 HMA pavement shall include surface course and may include one or
40 more binder courses, depending on HMA pavement thickness indicated in
41 the contract documents.

42
43 RAP is defined as removed or reprocessed pavement materials
44 containing asphalt and aggregates. Process RAP by crushing until 100
45 percent of RAP passes 3/4-inch sieve. Size, grade uniformly, and combine
46 materials such that blend of RAP and aggregate material conforms to grading

47 requirements of Subsection 703.09 - Aggregate for Hot Mix Asphalt
48 Pavement.

49
50 In surface and binder courses, aggregate for HMA may include RAP
51 quantities up to 20 percent of total mix weight.

52
53 Quantity of filler material to correct deficiencies in aggregate gradation
54 passing the No. 200 sieve shall not exceed 3 percent by weight of fine
55 aggregates.

56
57 **(B) Job-Mix Formula and Tests.** Design job-mix formula in accordance
58 with procedures contained in current edition of Asphalt Institute's *Mix Design*
59 *Methods for Asphalt Concrete and Other Hot Mix Types*, Manual Series No.
60 2 (MS-2) for either Marshall Method or Hveem Method of Mix Design.

61
62 Limit compacted lift thickness and asphalt content of job-mix formula
63 as specified in Table 401.02-1 - Limits of Compacted Lift Thickness and
64 Asphalt Content.

TABLE 401.02-1 - LIMITS OF COMPACTED LIFT THICKNESS AND ASPHALT CONTENT				
MIX NO.	II	III	IV	V
Minimum to Maximum Compacted Thickness for Individual Lifts (Inches)	2-1/4 to 3	2 to 3	1-1/2 to 3	1-1/4 to 3
Asphalt Content Limits (Percent of Total Weight of Mix)	3.8 to 6.1	4.3 to 6.1	4.3 to 6.5	4.8 to 7.0

66
67 Asphalt content limits for porous aggregate may be exceeded only if it
68 is requested ahead of placement and is reviewed then accepted in writing by
69 the Engineer.

70
71 Meet job-mix formula design criteria specified in Table 401.02-2 - Job-
72 Mix Formula Design Criteria.

TABLE 401.02-2 - JOB-MIX FORMULA DESIGN CRITERIA	
Hveem Method Mix Criteria (AASHTO T 246 and AASHTO T 247)	
Stability, minimum	37
Air Voids (percent) ¹	3 - 5
Marshall Method Mix Criteria (AASHTO T 245)	
Compaction (number of blows each end of specimen)	75
Stability, minimum (pounds)	1,800
Flow (x 0.01 inch)	8 - 16
Air Voids (percent) ¹	3 - 5
Notes:	
1. Air Voids: AASHTO T 166 or AASHTO T 275; AASHTO T 209, AASHTO T 269.	

76
77
78
79
80

Minimum percent voids in mineral aggregates (VMA) of job-mix formula shall be as specified in Table 401.02-3 - Minimum Percent Voids in Mineral Aggregates (VMA).

TABLE 401.02-3 - MINIMUM PERCENT VOIDS IN MINERAL AGGREGATES (VMA)					
Nominal Maximum Particle Size, (Inches)	1-1/2	1	3/4	1/2	3/8
VMA, (percent) ¹	11.0	12.0	13.0	14.0	15.0
Notes:					
1. VMA: See Asphalt Institute Manual MS-2					

81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96

(C) Submittals. Establish and submit job-mix formula for each type of HMA pavement mix indicated in the contract documents a minimum of 30 days before paving production. Job mix shall include the following applicable information:

- (1) Design percent of aggregate passing each required sieve size.
- (2) Design percent of asphalt binder material (type determined by type of mix) added to the aggregate (expressed as % by weight of total mix),
- (3) Design proportion of processed RAP.
- (4) Design temperature of mixture at point of discharge at paver.

- 97 (5) Source of aggregate.
- 98
- 99 (6) Grade of asphalt binder.
- 100
- 101 (7) Test data used to develop job-mix formula.
- 102

103 Except for item (4) in this subsection, if design requirements are
 104 modified after the Engineer accepts job-mix formula, submit new job-mix
 105 formula before using HMA produced from modified mix design. Submit any
 106 changes to the design temperature of mixture at point of discharge for
 107 acceptance by the Engineer.

108

109 Submit a certificate of compliance for the asphalt binder, accompanied
 110 by substantiating test data from a certified testing laboratory.

111

112 **(D) Range of Tolerances for HMA.** Provide HMA within allowable
 113 tolerances of accepted job-mix formula as specified in Table 401.02-4 -
 114 Range of Tolerances HMA. These tolerances are not to be used for the
 115 design of the job mix, they are solely to be used during the testing of the
 116 production field sample of the HMA mix.

117

TABLE 401.02-4 - RANGE OF TOLERANCES HMA	
Passing No. 4 and larger sieves (percent)	± 7.0
Passing No. 8 to No. 100 sieves (inclusive) (percent)	± 4.0
Passing No. 200 sieve (percent)	± 3.0
Asphalt Content (percent)	± 0.4
Mixture Temperature (degrees F)	± 20

118

119 The tolerances shown are the allowable variance between the physical
 120 characteristics of laboratory job mix submitted mix design and the production
 121 or operational mix, i.e., field samples.

122

123 **401.03 Construction.**

124

125 **(A) Weather Limitations.** Placement of HMA shall not be allowed under
 126 the following conditions:

- 127
- 128 (1) On wet surfaces, e.g., surface with ponding or running water,
 129 surface that has aggregate or surface that appears beyond surface
 130 saturated dry, as determined by the Engineer.
- 131

132
133
134
135
136
137
138
139
140
141
142
143
144
145
146
147
148
149
150
151
152
153
154
155
156
157
158
159
160
161
162
163
164
165
166
167
168
169
170
171
172

(2) When air temperature is below 50 degrees F and falling. HMA may be applied when air temperature is above 40 degrees F and rising. Air temperature will be measured in shade and away from artificial heat.

(3) When weather conditions prevent proper method of construction.

(B) Equipment.

(1) **Mixing Plant.** Use mixing plants that conform to AASHTO M 156, supplemented as follows:

(a) All Plants.

1. Automated Controls. Control proportioning, mixing, and mix discharging automatically. When RAP is incorporated into mixture, provide positive controls for proportioning processed RAP.

2. Dust Collector. AASHTO M 156, Requirements for All Plants, Emission Controls is amended as follows:

Equip plant with dust collector. Dispose of collected material. In the case of baghouse dust collectors, dispose of collected material or return collected material uniformly.

3. Modifications for Processing RAP. When RAP is incorporated into mixture, modify mixing plant in accordance with plant manufacturer's recommendations to process RAP.

(b) Drum Dryer-Mixer Plants.

1. Bins. Provide separate bin in cold aggregate feeder for each individual aggregate stockpile in mix. Use bins of sufficient size to keep plant in continuous operation and of proper design to prevent overflow of material from one bin to another.

173
174
175
176
177
178
179
180
181
182
183
184
185
186
187
188
189
190
191
192
193
194
195
196
197
198
199
200
201
202
203
204
205
206
207
208
209
210
211
212
213
214
215
216
217
218

2. Stockpiling Procedures. Separate aggregate for Mix II, Mix III and Mix IV into at least three stockpiles with different gradations as follows: coarse, intermediate, and fine. Separate aggregates for Mix V into at least two stockpiles. Stockpile RAP separately from virgin aggregates.

3. Checking Aggregate Stockpile. Check condition of the aggregate stockpile often enough to ensure that the aggregate is in optimal condition.

(c) Batch and Continuous Mix Plants.

1. Hot Aggregate Bin. Provide bin with three or more separate compartments for storage of screened aggregate fractions to be combined for mix. Make partitions between compartments tight and of sufficient height to prevent spillage of aggregate from one compartment into another.

2. Load Cells. Calibrated load cells may be used in batch plants instead of scales.

(2) Hauling Equipment. Use trucks that have tight, clean, smooth metal beds for hauling HMA.

Thinly coat truck beds with a minimum quantity of non-stripping release agent to prevent mixture from adhering to beds. Diesel or petroleum-based liquid release agents, except for paraffin oil, shall not be used. Drain excess release agent from truck bed before loading with HMA.

Provide a designated clean up area for the haul trucks.

Equip each truck with a tarpaulin conforming to the following:

- (a)** In good condition, without tears and holes.
- (b)** Large enough to be stretched tightly over truck bed, completely covering mix. The tarpaulin shall be secured in such a manner that it remains stretched tightly over truck bed and HMA mix until the bed is about to be raised up in preparation for discharge.

(3) Asphalt Pavers. Use asphalt pavers that are:

219
220
221
222
223
224
225
226
227
228
229
230
231
232
233
234
235
236
237
238
239
240
241
242
243
244
245
246
247
248
249
250
251
252
253
254
255
256
257
258
259
260

- (a) Self-contained, power-propelled units.
- (b) Equipped with activated screed or strike-off assembly, heated if necessary.
- (c) Capable of spreading and finishing courses of HMA mixtures in lane widths applicable to typical section and thicknesses indicated in the contract documents.
- (d) Equipped with receiving hopper having sufficient capacity for uniform spreading operation.
- (e) Equipped with automatic feed controls to maintain uniform depth of material ahead of screed.
- (f) Equipped with automatic screed controls with sensors capable of sensing grade from outside reference line, sensing transverse slope of screed, and providing automatic signals to control screed grade and transverse slope.
- (g) Capable of operating at constant forward speeds consistent with satisfactory laying of mixture.
- (h) Equipped with a means of preventing the segregation of the coarse aggregate particles from the remainder of the bituminous plant mix when that mix is carried from the paver hopper back to the paver augers. The means and methods used shall be approved by the paver manufacturer and may consist of chain curtains, deflector plates, or other such devices and any combination of these.

The following specific requirements shall apply to the identified bituminous pavers:

1. **Blaw-Knox Bituminous Pavers.** Blaw-Knox bituminous pavers shall be equipped with the Blaw-Knox Materials Management Kit (MMK).
2. **Cedarapids Bituminous Pavers.** Cedarapids bituminous pavers shall be those that were manufactured in 1989 or later.

261
262
263
264
265
266
267
268
269
270
271
272
273
274
275
276
277
278
279
280
281
282
283
284
285
286
287
288
289
290
291
292
293
294
295
296
297
298
299
300
301
302
303
304
305
306

3. Barber-Green/Caterpillar Bituminous Pavers.
Barber-Green/Caterpillar bituminous pavers shall be equipped with deflector plates as identified in the December 2000 Service Magazine entitled “New Asphalt Deflector Kit {6630, 6631, 6640}”.

Bituminous pavers not listed above shall have similar attachments or designs that shall make them equivalent to the bituminous pavers listed above. The Engineer will solely decide if it is equal to or better than the setups described for the equipment listed above.

Submit for review and acceptance, prior to the start of using the paver for the placing of plant mix, a full description in writing of the means and methods that will be used to prevent the bituminous paver from having both aggregate and temperature segregation. Use of any paver that has not been accepted is prohibited until acceptance of the paver is received from the Engineer. Any pavement placed with an unaccepted paver will be regarded as not compliant work and may not be paid for and may require removal.

Supply a Certificate of Compliance that verifies that the manufacturer’s approved means and methods used to prevent bituminous paver from having both aggregate and temperature segregation have been implemented on all pavers used on the project and are working in accordance with the manufacturer’s requirements and Contract Documents.

(4) Rollers. Rollers shall be self-propelled, steel-tired tandem, pneumatic-tired, or vibratory-type rollers capable of reversing without shoving or tearing the just placed HMA mixture. Provide sufficient number, sequencing, type, and rollers of sufficient weight to compact the mixture to required density while mixture is still in workable condition unless otherwise indicated. Equipment shall not excessively crush aggregate. Operate rollers in accordance with manufacturer’s recommendations and Contract Documents. The use of intelligent compaction is encouraged and may be required elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

(a) Steel-Tired Tandem Rollers. Steel-tired tandem rollers used for initial breakdown or intermediate roller passes shall have minimum gross weight of 12 tons and shall provide minimum 250-pound weight per linear inch of width on drive wheel.

307 Steel-tired tandem rollers used for finish roller passes
308 shall have minimum total gross weight of 3 tons.

309
310 Do not use roller with grooved or pitted rolling drum or
311 worn scrapers or wetting pads. Replace excessively worn
312 scrapers and wetting pads before use.

313
314 **(b) Pneumatic-Tired Rollers.** Pneumatic-tired rollers shall
315 be oscillating-type, equipped with smooth-tread pneumatic tires
316 of equal size and diameter. Maintain tire pressure within 5
317 pounds per square inch of designated operational pressure
318 when hot. Space tires so that gaps between adjacent tires are
319 covered by following set of tires.

320
321 Pneumatic-tired rollers used for breakdown or
322 intermediate roller passes shall have a ballast capable of
323 establishing an operating weight per tire of not less than 3,000
324 pounds. Equip rollers with tires having minimum 20-inch wheel
325 diameter with tires inflated to 70 to 75 pounds per square inch
326 pressure when cold and 90 pounds per square inch when hot.
327 Equip rollers with skirt-type devices to maintain temperature of
328 tires during rolling operations.

329
330 Pneumatic-tired rollers used for kneading finished
331 asphalt surfaces shall have a ballast capable of establishing an
332 operating weight per tire of not less than 1,500 pounds. Equip
333 rollers with tires having minimum 15-inch wheel diameter with
334 tires inflated to 50 to 60 pounds per square inch pressure. If
335 required, equip rollers with skirt-type devices to maintain
336 temperature of tires during rolling operations.

337
338 **(c) Vibratory Rollers.** Vibratory rollers shall be steel-tired
339 tandem rollers having minimum total weight of 3 tons. Equip
340 vibratory rollers with amplitude and frequency controls and
341 speedometer. Operate vibratory roller in accordance with
342 manufacturer's recommendations. For very thin lifts, 1 inch or
343 less in thickness, vibratory rollers shall not be used in the
344 vibratory mode. Instead, operate the unit in the static mode.

345
346 **(5) Hand Tools.** Keep hand tools used in production, hauling, and
347 placement of HMA clean and free of contaminants. Diesel or mineral
348 spirits or other cleaning material that is potentially deleterious to HMA
349 may be used to clean hand tools providing:

350
351 **(a)** It does not contaminate HMA with cleaning material.
352

353
354
355
356
357
358
359
360
361
362
363
364
365
366
367
368
369
370
371
372
373
374
375
376
377
378
379
380
381
382
383
384
385
386
387
388
389
390
391
392
393
394
395
396
397
398

(b) Clean hand tools over catch pan with capacity to hold all the cleaning material.

(c) Remove all diesel or mineral spirits or other cleaning material that is potentially deleterious to HMA from hand tools before using with HMA.

(d) Hand tools used shall be in a condition such that it meets the requirements that it was manufactured for, e.g., a straightedge shall meet the straightness requirement of the manufacturer.

(6) Material Transfer Vehicle (MTV).

(a) **Usage.** MTV usage applies to surface courses of paving projects on all Islands except Lanai, unless otherwise indicated. When placing HMA surface course use MTV to independently deliver mixtures from hauling equipment to paving equipment. MTV usage will not be required for the following:

1. Projects with less than 1,000 tons of HMA.
2. Temporary pavements.
3. Bridge deck approaches.
4. Shoulders.
5. Tapers.
6. Turning lanes.
7. Driveways.
8. Areas with low overhead clearances.

(b) **Equipment.** When using MTV, install minimum 10-ton-capacity hopper insert in conventional paver hopper. Provide the following equipment:

1. High-capacity truck unloading system in MTV capable of receiving HMA from hauling equipment.
2. MTV storage bin with minimum 15-ton capacity.
3. An auger mixing system in one of the following:

399
400
401
402
403
404
405
406
407
408
409
410
411
412
413
414
415
416
417
418
419
420
421
422
423
424
425
426
427
428
429
430
431
432
433
434
435
436
437
438
439
440
441
442
443

the MTV storage bin, or paver hopper insert, or paver hopper to continuously mix HMA prior to discharging to the paver's conveyor system.

Avoid stop-and-go operations by coordinating plant production rate, number of haul units, and MTV and paver speeds to provide a continuous, uniform, segregation-free material flow and smooth HMA pavement. Maintain uniform paver speed to produce smooth pavements.

(c) Performance Evaluation. Evaluate the performance of MTV and mixing equipment by measuring mat temperature profile immediately behind paver screed on first day of paving and when it feels the need to do so due to perceived changes in performance or as directed by the Engineer.

Use a hand-held temperature device that has been calibrated within the past 12 months. It shall be an infrared temperature gun is capable of measuring in one degree or finer increments between the temperatures of 80 degrees to 400 degrees F with a laser to indicate where the temperature reading is being taken. Six temperature profile measurements shall be taken of mat surface using infrared temperature gun at 50-foot intervals behind paver. Each temperature profile shall consist of three surface temperature measurements taken transversely across the mat in approximately a straight line from screed while paver is operating. For each profile, temperatures shall be measured approximately 1 foot from each edge and in middle of mat. The difference between maximum and minimum temperature measurements for each temperature profile shall not exceed 10 degrees F. If any two or more temperature profiles exceeds the allowable 10-degree F temperature differential, halt paving operation and adjust MTV or mixing equipment to ensure that material placed by paver meets specified temperature requirements. Redo the measuring of mat temperature profile until adjustment of the MTV or mixing equipment is adequate. Submit all temperature profiles to the Engineer by next business day. Information on the report shall show location and temperature readings and time test was performed. Enough information shall be given, so the Engineer will be able to easily locate the test site of the individual measurement.

When requested temperature profile measurements shall be done in the presence of the Engineer.

444 Once adjustments are made, repeat measurement
445 procedure for the next two placements to verify that material
446 placed by paver meets specified temperature requirements.
447 Terminate paving if temperature profile requirements are not
448 met during repeated measurement procedure. If equipment
449 fails to meet requirements after measurement procedure is
450 repeated once, replace equipment before conducting any
451 further temperature profile measurements
452

453 The Engineer may perform surface temperature profile
454 measurements at any time during project. The Engineer may
455 in lieu of a hand-held infrared temperature device use an
456 infrared camera or device that is capable of measuring
457 temperatures to locate cold spots. If such cold spots exist, the
458 Engineer may require adjustments to the MTV.
459

460 If bleeding or fat spots occur in the pavement adjust
461 means and methods to eliminate such pavement defects and
462 perform remedial repair to pavement acceptable to the
463 Engineer. Bleeding is defined as excess binder occurring on
464 the surface of the pavement. It may create a shiny, glass-like,
465 reflective appearance and may be tacky to the touch. Fat spots
466 are localized bleeding.
467

468 **(d) Transport.**
469

470 **1. Trailered MTV.** Transport MTV by means of
471 truck-tractor/trailer combination in accordance with
472 Chapter 104 of Title 19, Department of Transportation,
473 entitled "The Movement by Permit of Oversize and
474 Overweight Vehicles on State Highways".
475

476 **2. Crossing Bridges for Self-Powered MTV.**
477 When self-powered MTV exceeds legal axle or total
478 weight limits for vehicles under the HRS, Chapter 291,
479 conform to the following when crossing bridges within
480 project limits unless otherwise indicated:
481

- 482 **a.** Completely remove mix from MTV.
- 483
- 484 **b.** Move MTV at relatively constant speed not
485 exceeding 5 miles per hour. MTV will not be
486 allowed to stop on bridge.
487

488 c. No other vehicle or equipment will be
489 allowed on bridge.

490
491 d. The MTV shall not attempt to cross a
492 bridge where the posted load limit is less than or
493 equal to the weight of the MTV empty.
494 Permission to cross the bridge shall be obtained
495 from the Engineer and HWY-DB in writing.
496

497 **(C) Preparation of Surface.** Clean existing pavement in accordance with
498 Section 310 - Brooming Off. Apply tack coat in accordance with Section 407
499 - Tack Coat. Tack coat shall not be applied to surfaces to receive an
500 application of joint adhesive.
501

502 Where indicated, bring irregular surfaces to uniform grade and cross
503 section by furnishing and placing one or more leveling courses of HMA Mix
504 V. Spread leveling course in variable thicknesses to eliminate irregularities
505 in existing surface. Place leveling course such that maximum depth of each
506 course, when thoroughly compacted to the Contract Documents'
507 requirements, does not exceed 3 inches.
508

509 In multiple-lift leveling course construction, spread subsequent lifts
510 beyond edges of previously spread lifts in accordance with procedures
511 contained in current edition of the Asphalt Institute's *Construction of Hot Mix*
512 *Asphalt Pavements*, Manual Series No. 22 (MS-22) for leveling wedges.
513

514 Notify the Engineer of existing surfaces that may not be in a condition
515 that will have enough strength to be a good bonding surface or foundation
516 and should be removed or have remedial repairs done before new pavement
517 placement.
518

519 **(D) Plant Operation.**
520

521 **(1) Preparation of Asphalt Binder.** Uniformly heat asphalt binder
522 and provide continuous supply of heated asphalt cement from storage
523 to mixer. Do not heat asphalt binder above the recommendation of
524 the supplier for modified binders or above 350 degrees F for neat
525 binders.
526

527 **(2) Preparation of Aggregate.** Dry and heat aggregate material
528 at temperature sufficient to produce design temperature of job-mix
529 formula. Do not exceed 350 degrees F. Adjust heat source used for
530 drying and heating to avoid damage to and contamination of
531 aggregate. When dry, aggregate shall not contain more than 1
532 percent moisture by weight.
533

534 For batch plants, screen aggregates immediately after heating
535 and drying into three or more fractions. Convey aggregates into
536 separate compartments ready for batching and mixing with asphalt
537 binder.

538
539 **(3) Mixing.** Measure aggregate and asphalt; or aggregate, RAP,
540 and asphalt into mixer in accordance with an accepted job-mix
541 formula. Mix until components are completely mixed and adequately
542 coated with asphalt binder in accordance with AASHTO M 156.
543 Percent of coated particles shall be 95 percent when tested in
544 accordance with AASHTO T 195.

545
546 **(4) Plant Inspection.** For control and acceptance testing during
547 periods of production, provide a testing laboratory that meets the
548 requirements of AASHTO M 156. Provide space, utilities, and
549 equipment required for performing specified tests.

550
551 **(E) Spreading and Finishing.** Prior to each day's paving operation,
552 check screed or strike-off assembly surface with straight edge to ensure
553 straight alignment and there is no damage or wear to the machine that will
554 affect performance. Provide screed or strike-off assembly that produces
555 finished surface without tearing, shoving, and gouging HMA. Discontinue
556 using spreading equipment that leaves ridges, indentations, or other marks,
557 or combination thereof in surface that cannot be eliminated by rolling or
558 affects the final smoothness of the pavement or be prevented by adjustment
559 in operation.

560
561 Maintain HMA at minimum 250 degrees F temperature at discharge to
562 paver. The Engineer shall observe the contractor measuring the temperature
563 of mix in hauling vehicle just before depositing into spreader or paver or MTV.

564
565 Deposit HMA in a manner that minimizes segregation. Raise truck
566 beds with tailgates closed before discharging HMA.

567
568 Lay, spread, and strike off HMA upon prepared surface. Where
569 practical, use asphalt pavers to distribute mixture.

570
571 Where practical, control horizontal alignment using automatic grade
572 and slope controls from reference line, slope control device. Existing
573 pavements or features shall not be used for grade control alone.

574
575 Obtain sensor grade reference, horizontal alignment by using
576 established grade and slope controls. For subsequent passes, substitution
577 of one ski with joint-matching shoe riding on finished adjacent pavement is
578 acceptable. Use of a comparable non-contact mobile reference system and
579 joint matching shoe is acceptable.

580
581
582
583
584
585
586
587
588
589
590
591
592
593
594
595
596
597
598
599
600
601
602
603
604
605
606
607
608
609
610
611
612
613
614
615
616
617

Avoid stop-and-go operation. Maintain a constant forward speed of paver during paving operation and minimize other methods that impact smoothness.

Offset longitudinal joint in successive lifts by approximately 6 inches. Incorporate into paving method an overlap of material of 1-inch +/- 0.5 inches at the longitudinal joint. The HMA overlap material shall be left alone when initially placed and shall not be bumped back or pushed back with a lute or any other hand-held device. If the overlap exceeds the maximum amount, remove the excess with a flat shovel, allowing recommended amount of overlap HMA material to remain in place to be compacted. Do not throw the removed excess HMA material on to the paving mat. The longitudinal joint in a surface course when total roadway width is comprised of two lanes shall be near the centerline of pavement or near lane lines when roadway is more than two lanes in width. The longitudinal joint shall not be constructed in the wheel path or under the longitudinal lane lines. Make a paving plan drawing showing how the longitudinal joint will not be located in these areas.

Control the horizontal alignment of the longitudinal edge of the HMA mat being installed so that the edge is parallel to the centerline or has a uniform alignment, e.g., the edge of the mat is straight line or uniform curve, no wavy edge, etc. to have a consistent amount of HMA material at the joint.

Check the compaction of the longitudinal joint during paving often enough to ensure that it will meet the compaction requirements.

If nuclear gauges and ground penetrating radar are used as the contractor's quality control method, they shall be properly calibrated and periodically checked by comparison to cores taken from the pavement. The use of sand as an aid in properly seating the gauge may also be considered for improving the accuracy of the gauge.

In areas where irregularities or unavoidable obstacles make use of mechanical spreading and finishing equipment impracticable, spread, rake, and lute mixture by hand tools. For such areas, deposit, spread evenly, and screed mixture to required compacted thickness.

618 Demonstrate competence of personnel operating grade and crown
619 control device before placing surface courses. If automatic control system
620 becomes inoperative during the day's work, the Engineer will permit the
621 Contractor to finish day's work using manual controls. The Engineer may
622 also allow additional HMA to be ordered and placed using manual controls if
623 it will provide a safer work site for the public to travel through. Do not resume
624 work until automatic control system is made operative. The Engineer may
625 waive requirement for electronic screed control device when paving gores,
626 shoulders, transitions, and miscellaneous reconstruction areas where the
627 use of the devices is not practical.

628
629 When production of HMA can be maintained and when practicable,
630 use pavers in echelon shall be used to place surface course in adjacent
631 lanes.

632
633 At the end of each workday, HMA pavement that is open to traffic shall
634 not extend beyond the panel of the adjacent new lane pavement by more
635 than the distance normally placed in one workday. At end of each day's
636 production, construct tapered transitions along all longitudinal and transverse
637 pavement drop-offs; this shall apply to areas where existing pavement is to
638 meet newly placed pavement. Use slopes of 6:1 for longitudinal taper
639 transitions and 48:1 for transverse tapered transitions. Maximum drop-off
640 height along the joints shall be 2 inches. Also, using a 48:1 slope provides a
641 taper around any protruding object, e.g., manholes, drain boxes, survey
642 monuments, inlets, etc., that may be above pavement surface when opened
643 to the public. If the object is below the surface of the pavement then fill the
644 depression until it is level with the surrounding pavement or raise depressed
645 objects to the finish grade of the placed pavement. Remove and dispose of
646 all transition tapers before placing adjoining panel or next layer of HMA.
647 Notify traveling public of pavement drop-offs or raised objects with signs
648 placed in every direction of traffic that may use and encounter pavement
649 drop-offs or protruding objects or holes.

650
651 Use the same taper rates for areas where there is a difference in
652 elevation due to construction work.

653
654 At end of each workweek, complete full width of the roadway's
655 pavement, including shoulders, to same elevation with no drop-offs.

656
657 **(F) Compaction.** Immediately after spreading and striking off HMA and
658 adjusting surface irregularities, uniformly compact mixture by rolling.

659
660 Initiate compaction at highest mix temperature allowing compaction
661 without excessive horizontal movement. Temperature shall not be less than
662 220 degrees F.

664 Finish rolling using tandem roller while HMA temperature is at or
665 above 175 degrees F.

666
667 On superelevated curves, begin rolling at lower edge and progress to
668 higher edge by overlapping of longitudinal trips parallel to centerline.

669
670 If necessary, repair damage immediately using rakes and fresh mix.
671 Do not displace line and grade of HMA edges during rolling.

672
673 Keep roller wheels properly moistened with water or water mixed with
674 small quantities of detergent. Use of excess liquid, diesel, and petroleum-
675 based liquids will not be allowed on rollers.

676
677 Along forms, curbs, headers, walls and other places not accessible to
678 rollers, compact mixture with hot hand tampers, smoothing irons, or
679 mechanical tampers. On depressed areas, trench roller or cleated
680 compression strips under roller may be used to transmit compression.

681
682 Before the start of compaction or during compaction or both remove
683 pavement that is loose, broken, or contaminated, or combination thereof;
684 pavement that shows an excess or deficiency in asphalt binder content; and
685 pavement that is defective in any way. Replace with fresh HMA pavement of
686 same type, and compact. Remove and replace defective pavement and
687 compact at no increase in contract price or contract time.

688
689 Operate rollers at slow and uniform speed with no sudden stops. The
690 drive wheels shall be nearest to the paver. Continue rolling to attain specified
691 density and until roller marks are eliminated.

692
693 Rollers shall not be parked on the pavement placed that day or shift.

694
695 **(1) HMA Pavement Courses One and a Half Inches Thick or**
696 **Greater.** Where HMA pavement compacted thickness indicated in the
697 Contract Documents is 1-1/2 inches or greater, compact to not less
698 than 93.0 percent nor greater than 97.0 percent of the maximum
699 specific gravity determined in accordance with AASHTO T 209,
700 modified by deletion of Supplemental Procedure for Mixtures
701 Containing Porous Aggregate.

702
703 Place HMA pavement in individual lifts that are within minimum
704 and maximum allowable compacted thickness for various types of
705 mixture as specified in Table 401.02-1 - Limits of Compacted Lift
706 Thickness and Asphalt Content.
707

708
709
710
711
712
713
714
715
716
717
718
719
720
721
722
723
724
725
726
727
728
729
730
731
732
733
734
735
736
737
738
739
740
741
742
743
744
745
746
747
748
749
750
751
752

(2) HMA Pavement Courses Less Than One and a Half Inches Thick. Where HMA pavement compacted thickness indicated in the contract documents is less than 1-1/2 inches, compaction to a specified density will not be required.

Use only non-vibratory, steel-tired, tandem roller. Roll entire surface with minimum of two roller passes. A roller pass is defined as one trip of the roller in one direction over any one spot.

For intermediate rolling, roll entire surface with minimum of four passes of roller.

Finish rolling using steel-tired, tandem roller. Continue rolling until entire surface has been compacted with minimum of three passes of roller, and roller marks have been eliminated.

Do not use rollers that will excessively crush aggregate.

(3) HMA Pavement Courses One and a Half Inches Thick or Greater In Special Areas Not Designated For Vehicular Traffic. For areas such as bikeways that are not part of roadway and other areas not subjected to vehicular traffic, compact to not less than 90.0 percent of maximum specific gravity determined in accordance with AASHTO T 209, modified by deletion of Supplemental Procedure for Mixtures Containing Porous Aggregate. Increase asphalt content by at least 0.5 percent above that used for HMA pavements designed for vehicular traffic. Paved shoulders shall be compacted in the same manner as pavements designed for vehicular traffic.

(G) Joints, Trimming Edges and Utility Marking. At HMA pavement connections to existing pavements, make joints vertical to depth of new pavement. Saw cut existing pavement and cold plane in accordance with Section 415 - Cold Planing of Existing Pavement to depth equal to thickness of surface course or as indicated in the Contract Documents.

At HMA connections to previously placed lifts, form transverse joints by cutting back on previous run to expose full depth of course. Dispose of material trimmed from edges. Protect end of freshly laid mixture from rollers.

Before and after paving, identify and mark location of existing utility manholes, valves, and handholes on finished surface. Adjust existing frames and covers and valve boxes to final pavement finish grade in accordance with Section 604 - Manholes, Inlets and Catch Basins and Section 626 - Manholes and Valve Boxes for Water and Sewer Systems.

753 (1) Longitudinal joints. Submit for review the means and methods
754 that will be used to install longitudinal joints at the required compaction
755 and density. Compact longitudinal joints to be not less than 91.0
756 percent of the maximum specific gravity determined in accordance
757 with AASHTO T 209, modified by deletion of Supplemental Procedure
758 for Mixtures Containing Porous Aggregate. Verify the compaction of
759 the longitudinal joints meets requirements by using non-destructive
760 testing methods during paving and submit the results on the daily
761 quality control test reports.

762
763 Test for compaction and density regardless of layer thickness.
764 Compaction and density of the longitudinal joint shall be determined by using
765 six-inch diameter cores. For longitudinal joints made using butt joints cores
766 shall be taken over the joint with half of the core being on each side of the
767 joint. For longitudinal joints using butt wedge joints, center core over the
768 center of the wedge so that 50 percent of the material is from the most
769 recently paved material and the remaining 50 percent of the core is from the
770 material used to pave the previous layer. One core shall be taken at a
771 maximum of every 250 tons of longitudinal joint and any fraction of that length
772 for each day of paving with a minimum of one core taken for each longitudinal
773 joint per day. Cores taken for the testing of the longitudinal joint may be used
774 to determine pavement thickness.

775
776 When the longitudinal joints are found to have less than 91.0 percent
777 of the maximum specific gravity, overband all longitudinal joints within the
778 entire lot represented by the non-compliant core, PG binder seal coat, or
779 other type of joint enrichment accepted by the Engineer. The overband shall
780 not decrease the skid resistance of the pavement under any ambient weather
781 condition. Submit overband material's catalog cuts, test results and
782 application procedure for review and acceptance by the Engineer before use.
783 Center the overband over the longitudinal joint. The overband shall be placed
784 in a uniform width and horizontal alignment. The overband shall have no
785 holidays or streaking in its placement. The width of the overband shall be
786 based on how the longitudinal joint was constructed or as directed by the
787 Engineer. If a butt joint is used, the overband width shall be a minimum of
788 12-inches. For butt wedge or wedge joints the overband width shall be the
789 width of the wedge plus an additional six-inches minimum. Replace any
790 pavement markings damaged or soiled by the overband remedial repair
791 process.

792
793 For longitudinal joints that have a compaction of less than 89 percent
794 of the maximum specific gravity; removal may be required by the Engineer
795 instead of overbanding the non-compliant joint.

796
797 Persistent low compaction results may be cause to suspend work and
798 remove non-conforming work. During the suspension of paving, revise

799 means and methods used in constructing longitudinal joints and submit to the
800 Engineer for review and acceptance. Suspension may occur when:

- 801
- 802 (1) Two or more longitudinal joints tests fail to meet the minimum
- 803 compaction
- 804 (2) One sample reveals that the joint compaction is 89 percent or
- 805 less.
- 806

807 Compaction results for longitudinal joints until January 1, 2023 will not
808 be included in any Sliding Scale Pay Factor for Compaction payment
809 calculation. After, January 1, 2023 it will be included.

810
811 **(H) HMA Pavement Samples.** Obtain test samples from compacted
812 HMA pavement within 72 hours of lay down. Provide minimum 4-inch
813 diameter cores consisting of undisturbed, full-depth portion of compacted
814 mixture taken at locations designated by the Engineer in accordance with the
815 “Sampling and Testing Guide for Acceptance and Verification” in Hawaii DOT
816 Highways Division, *Quality Assurance Manual for Materials*, Appendix 3.
817 Cores shall be taken in the presence of the Engineer. Turn cores over to
818 Engineer immediately after cores have been taken.

819
820 For pavement samples for longitudinal joints provide 6-inch diameter
821 cores minimum. For pavement samples for other than longitudinal joints
822 4-inch diameter cores minimum shall be taken. All cores shall consist of
823 undisturbed, full-depth of the lift of the compacted mixture taken at locations
824 designated by the Engineer in accordance with the “Sampling and Testing
825 Guide for Acceptance and Verification” in Hawaii DOT Highways Division,
826 *Quality Assurance Manual for Materials*, appendix 3. Coring of longitudinal
827 joints shall use a modified HDOT Sampling and Testing Guide as required
828 by the Contract Documents.

829
830 Cores that separate shall indicate to the Engineer that there is
831 insufficient bonding of layers. Modify the previously used paving means and
832 methods to prevent future debonding of layers. Debonding of a core sample
833 after adjustment of the Contractor’s methods will be an indication of
834 continued non-conforming work and the Engineer may direct removal of the
835 layer at no additional cost or contract time.

836
837 Restore HMA pavement immediately after obtaining samples. Clean core
838 hole and walls of all deleterious material that will prevent the complete filling
839 of the core hole and the bonding of the new HMA to the existing. Apply tack
840 coat to vertical faces of sample holes. Fill sampled area with new HMA
841 pavement of same type as that removed. If hand compaction is used; fill in
842 layers not exceeding the minimum thickness stated in Table 401.02-1 - Limits
843 of Compacted Lift Thickness And Asphalt Content. Compact each layer to
844 compaction requirements. If Mechanical Compaction methods are used, then

845 layers may be the maximum layer thickness stated in Table 401.02-1 - Limits
846 of Compacted Lift Thickness And Asphalt Content. Using tires or hand
847 tamping to compact the HMA material to restore the pavement shall not be
848 considered as mechanical compaction.

849
850 Only sample and test leveling course if 1-1/2 inches or greater. No
851 compaction requirements for less than 1-1/2 inches.

852
853 **(I) HMA Pavement Thickness Tolerances.**

854
855 The Engineer will measure thickness of pavement by cores obtained
856 by the Contractor in accordance with HDOT TM 09-19 Field Sampling
857 Bituminous Material after Compaction (Obtaining Cores). The Engineer will
858 measure cores in accordance with HDOT TM 09-19, except that
859 measurement will be taken to nearest one thousandth of an inch; and
860 average of such measurements will be taken to nearest one hundredth of an
861 inch.

862
863 Thickness of finished HMA pavement shall be within 0.25 inch of
864 thickness indicated in the Contract Documents. Pavement not meeting the
865 thickness requirements of the Contract Documents may be required by the
866 Engineer to be removed and replaced.

867
868 Corrective methods taken on pavement exceeding specified
869 tolerances, e.g., insufficient thickness by methods accepted by the Engineer,
870 including removal and replacement, shall be at no increase in contract price
871 or contract time.

872
873 The checking of pavement thickness shall be done after all remedial
874 repairs, e.g., smoothness compliance repairs, compaction, have been
875 completed, reviewed, and accepted by the Engineer.

876 **(J) Quality Control Using New Technology.** The Engineer and MTRB
877 reserves the right to utilize new technology and methods to improve the
878 detection of noncompliant work on the project. The technology or method
879 may be used to locate defects in the work, e.g., ground penetrating radar to
880 locate delaminations, moisture damage, thin sections, voids, non-compliant
881 compaction, other non-destructive testing to locate flaws. The defect will be
882 verified by the methods stated in the Contract Documents or by other
883 established conventional means. If the technology or method has already
884 been accepted elsewhere or has standardized testing procedures the results
885 may be judged acceptable by the Engineer and no further testing will be
886 required. These new technologies and methods may be used for the
887 selection of sampling locations.

888
889 **(K) Protection of HMA Pavement.** Except for construction equipment
890 directly connected with paving operations, keep traffic off HMA pavement.

891
892
893
894
895
896
897
898
899
900
901
902
903
904
905
906
907
908
909
910
911
912
913
914
915
916
917
918
919
920
921
922
923
924
925
926
927
928
929
930
931
932
933
934
935
936

Protect HMA pavement from damage until it has cooled and set.

Do not refuel equipment or clean equipment or hand tools over paved surfaces unless catch pan or device that will contain spilled fuel and other products is provided. After completion of refueling or cleaning, remove catch pan or device without spilling any of the collected content.

Do not park roller or other paving equipment on HMA pavement paved within 24 hours of laydown.

(L) Pavement Joint Adhesive

(1) Pavement Joint Adhesive on Joints. Use on all asphalt pavement construction where joints are formed at such locations but not limited to the following:

(a) Adjacent asphalt pavements, e.g., trafficked lanes, shoulders, etc.

(b) Asphalt pavement and adjacent concrete pavement or curb and gutter or any other surface where the bonding of the asphalt pavement and concrete surface is desired,

(c) Transverse joints between asphalt pavements not placed at the same time or if the pavement's temperature on one side of the joint is below the minimum temperature the mix can be at, during asphalt pavement compaction or installation.

(d) Cut face of an existing pavement where it will have new HMA pavement placed against it, e.g., utility trenches, partial or full depth repairs, etc.

Pavement joint adhesive is not required on a longitudinal construction joint between adjacent hot mix asphalt pavements formed by echelon paving. Echelon paving is defined as paving multiple lanes side-by-side with adjacent pavers slightly offset at the same time.

A longitudinal construction joint between one shift's work and another shall have pavement joint adhesive applied at the joint. Any longitudinal construction joint formed, with the temperature on one side of the joint that is below the minimum temperature the mix can be when compacted to contract requirements during asphalt pavement installation, shall have pavement joint adhesive applied at the joint.

937
938
939
940

(2) Material requirements. Asphalt joint adhesive shall meet requirements as specified in Table 401.03-1 - Asphalt Joint Adhesive Specifications.

TABLE 401.03-1 – ASPHALT JOINT ADHESIVE SPECIFICATIONS		
TEST		SPECIFICATION
Brookfield Viscosity, 204 °C [400 °F]	ASTM D 3236	4,000-10,000 cp
Cone Penetration, 25 °C [77 °F]	ASTM D 5329	60-100 dmm
Resilience, 25 °C [77 °F]	ASTM D 5329	30% minimum
Ductility, 25 °C [77 °F]	ASTM D 113	30 cm minimum
Ductility, 4 °C [39.2 °F]	ASTM D 113	30 cm minimum
Tensile Adhesion, 25 °C [77 °F]	ASTM D 5329	500% minimum
Softening Point	ASTM D 36	77 °C [170 °F] min.
Asphalt Compatibility	ASTM D 5329	Pass

941
942
943
944
945
946
947
948
949
950
951
952
953
954
955
956
957
958
959
960
961
962
963
964
965
966
967
968
969

(3) Construction Requirements for Asphalt Joint Adhesive

(a) Equipment Requirements. Use a jacketed double boiler type melting unit, with both agitation and recirculation systems. Provide a pressure feed wand application system.

(b) Material Handling. Submit a copy of the manufacturer's recommendations for heating, re-heating, and applying the joint adhesive material. Follow manufacturer's recommendations. Do not remove the joint adhesive from the package until immediately before it is placed in the melter. Joint adhesive boxes must be clearly marked with the name of the manufacturer, the trade name of the adhesive, the manufacturer's batch and lot number, the application/pour temperature, and the safe heating temperature. Feed additional material into the melter at a rate equal to the rate of material used.

Verify the pouring temperature of the joint adhesive at least once per hour at the point of discharge. Stop production if the adhesive falls below the recommended application/pour temperature. When the temperature of the adhesive exceeds the maximum safe heating temperature, stop production, empty the melter, and dispose of that adhesive in an environmentally safe method. No payment will be made for this material or its disposal.

Do not blend or mix different manufacturer's brands or different

970
971
972
973
974
975
976
977
978
979
980
981
982
983
984
985
986
987
988
989
990
991
992
993
994
995
996
997
998
999
1000
1001
1002
1003
1004
1005
1006
1007
1008
1009
1010
1011
1012
1013
1014
1015

types of adhesives.

(c) Joint Adhesive Application: The face of the joint that the new asphalt pavement will bind to shall be clean and dry before the joint adhesive is applied. Apply the pavement joint adhesive material to the entire face of the surface where HMA pavement shall be installed. The thickness of the asphalt adhesive application shall be approximately 1/8 inch. Use an application shoe attached to the end of application wand. Do not overlap the joint by greater than 1/2-inch at the top of the joint or two-inches at the bottom of the joint. Apply the joint adhesive immediately in front of the paving operation. If the adhesive is tracked by construction vehicles, repair the damaged area, and restrict traffic from driving on the adhesive.

(d) Field Sampling. Take a sample from the application wand during the first 20 minutes of placing sealant. One sample should be taken per manufacturer's batch or minimum of every 6 months on the Project in the presence of the Engineer.

Each sample shall consist of one quart in an aluminum or steel sample container. The sampling container shall be labeled with Contractor's name; project name and number; date and time sample taken; location of where material was used at, e.g., from where to where it was used at in stations; manufacturer and lot number of the sealant. Turn over samples to Engineer without Engineer losing sight of the sample. The Engineer reserves the right to conduct supplementary sampling and testing of the sealant material.

(M) Pavement Smoothness Rideability Test. Perform surface profile tests frequently to ensure that the means and methods being used produces pavement that is compliant with the surface profile smoothness requirement. Test the pavement surface for smoothness with High-Speed Inertial Profiler to determine the International Roughness Index (IRI) of the pavement. For the locations determined by the Engineer, a 10-foot straightedge shall be used to measure smoothness.

All smoothness testing must be performed with the presence of the Engineer. The High-Speed Inertial Profiler operator shall be a certified operator by MTRB or the manufacturer.

The High-Speed Inertial Profiler operator's certification shall be no older than five years old at the date of the Notice to Proceed and at the day of the pavement profile measurement.

1016
1017
1018
1019
1020
1021
1022
1023
1024
1025
1026
1027
1028
1029
1030
1031
1032
1033
1034
1035
1036
1037
1038
1039
1040
1041
1042
1043
1044
1045
1046
1047
1048
1049
1050
1051
1052
1053
1054
1055
1056
1057
1058
1059
1060

The finished pavement shall comply to all the following requirements:

(a) Smoothness Test using 10-Foot Straightedge (Manual or rolling) The 10-foot straightedge is used to identify the locations that vary more than 3/16 inch from the lower edge when the 10-foot straightedge is laid on finished pavement on the direction parallel with the centerline or perpendicular to centerline. Remove the high points that cause the surface to exceed that 3/16 inch tolerance by grinding.

The Contractor shall use a 10-foot straightedge for the following locations:

1. Longitudinal profiling parallel to centerline, when within 15 feet of a bridge approach or existing pavement which is being joined.
2. Transverse profiling of cross slopes, approaches, and as otherwise directed. Lay the straightedge in a direction perpendicular to the centerline.
3. When pavement abuts bridge approaches or pavement not under this Contract, ensure that the longitudinal slope deviations of the finished pavement comply with Contract Document's requirements.
4. Short pavement sections up to 600 feet long, including both mainline and non-mainline sections on tangent sections and on horizontal curves with a centerline radius of curve less than 1,000 feet.
5. Within a superelevation transition on horizontal curves having centerline curve radius less than 1,000 feet, e.g., curves, turn lanes, ramps, tapers, and other non-mainline pavements.
6. Within 15 feet of transverse joint that separates pavement from existing pavement not constructed under the contract, or from bridge deck or approach slab for longitudinal profiling.
7. At miscellaneous areas of improvement where width is less than 11 feet, such as medians, gore areas, and shoulders.
8. As otherwise directed by the Engineer. The Engineer may confine the checking of through traffic lanes with the

1061
1062
1063
1064
1065
1066
1067
1068
1069
1070
1071
1072
1073
1074
1075
1076
1077
1078
1079
1080
1081
1082
1083
1084
1085
1086
1087
1088
1089
1090
1091
1092
1093

straightedge to joints and obvious irregularities or choose to use it at locations not specifically stated in this Section.

(b) High-Speed Inertial Profiler

There shall be a minimum 3 profile runs per lane, for each wheel path (left and right) which is approximately three feet from edge lane line. The segment length shall be 0.1 mi. The final segments in a lane that are less than 0.1 mi shall be evaluated as an independent segment and pay adjustments will be prorated for length. The profiles shall be taken in the direction of traffic only.

The latest version of FHWA ProVAL software shall be used to conduct profile analysis to determine IRI and areas of localized roughness. The IRI values shall be reported in units of in/mi.

Areas of localized roughness will be identified by using ProVAL’s “Smoothness Assurance” analysis, calculating IRI with a continuous short interval of 25 feet and the 250-mm filter applied.

Additional runs may be required by the Engineer if the data indicate a lack of repeatability of results. A 92% agreement is required for repeatability and IRI values shall have at minimum a 95% confidence level.

(N) Required Pavement Smoothness

The IRI for the left and right wheel paths in an individual lane will be computed and then averaged to determine the Mean Roughness Index (MRI) values. The MRI will be used to determine acceptance and pay adjustment. Each lane shall be tested and evaluated separately.

There are three (3) categories of target MRI values:

TABLE 401.03-2 – PAVEMENT SMOOTHNESS CATEGORIES		
Category	Description	MRI
Type A	Three or more HMA Lifts	Shall not exceed 60 in/mi
Type B	Two HMA Lifts	Shall not exceed 70 in/mi
Type C	One HMA Lift	Shall not exceed 75 in/mi

1094
1095
1096
1097
1098

For the location where a 10-foot manual straightedge is required, the surface shall not vary more than 3/16 inch from the lower edge of a straightedge.

1099 No pre-final inspection, final inspection, and substantial completion
1100 granted will be made until the pavement meets smoothness requirement and
1101 all required profile reports are submitted to the Engineer and MTRB and are
1102 accepted.

1103
1104 **(O) Request for Profile Testing by the Department.**

1105
1106 For Type C, prior to pavement activities, the Engineer will measure the
1107 smoothness of the existing pavement.

1108
1109 The Contractor shall submit a written request to the Engineer to
1110 perform all required profile tests.

1111
1112 The request shall be made at least 30 days before desired testing date
1113 and shall include an approximate acceptance profile testing date, a plan view
1114 drawing of the area to be tested with the limits of the test area highlighted.

1115 The Contractor shall reimburse HDOT for any incurred cost related to
1116 any Contractor-caused cancellation or a deduction to the monthly payment
1117 will be made.

1118
1119 **(P) Department Requirements for Profile Testing.** When a request for
1120 testing is made, the requested area to be tested shall be 100% of the total
1121 area indicated to be paved in the Contract Documents unless the requirement
1122 is waived by the Engineer and MTRB.

1123
1124 Department acceptance surface tests will not be performed earlier
1125 than 14 days after HMA placement.

1126
1127 Clean debris and clear obstructions from area to be tested, as well as
1128 a minimum of 100 feet before and beyond the area to be tested before testing
1129 starts for use as staging areas. Provide traffic control for all profile testing.

1130
1131 The Engineer or MTRB or both may cancel the profile testing if the test
1132 area is not sufficiently clean, traffic control is unsatisfactory, or the area is not
1133 a safe work environment or test area does not meet Contract Document
1134 requirements. This canceled profile test will count as one profile test.

1135
1136
1137 **(Q) Cost of Acceptance Profile Testing by The Department.** The
1138 Engineer, MTRB, or State's Third-Party Consultant will perform one initial
1139 profile test, at no cost to the Contractor for each area to be tested.

1140
1141 The Department's High-Speed Inertial Profiler pavement profile will be
1142 used to determine if the pavement's profile, i.e., smoothness is acceptable.

1144 If the profile of the pavement does not meet the requirements of the
1145 Contract Documents, the Contractor shall perform remedial work, i.e.
1146 corrective work then retest the area to ensure that the area has the required
1147 MRI, i.e., smoothness, before requesting another profile test by the Engineer.
1148

1149 **(1) Additional testing.** Additional testing, by the Department
1150 beyond the initial test will be performed at cost to the Contractor as
1151 follows:
1152

1153 **(a)** \$2,500 per test will be required when Department
1154 personnel or State's Third-Party Consultant is used.
1155

1156 **(R) Remedial Work for Pavements.**
1157

1158 **(1)** Corrective work shall be required for any 25 ft interval with a
1159 localized roughness in excess of 160 in/ mi. The Engineer may waive
1160 localized roughness requirements for deficiencies resulting from
1161 manholes or other similar appurtenances. Adjust manholes or other
1162 similar appurtenances so that using a 10-ft. straightedge the area
1163 around that manhole or other similar appurtenance shall not have
1164 more than 3/16-in. variation between any 2 contacts on the
1165 straightedge.
1166

1167 If corrective action is not successful, the Engineer may require
1168 continued corrective action, or apply a payment adjustment of \$250
1169 per occurrence.
1170

1171 **(2)** Corrective work shall also be required for any 0.1 mile interval
1172 with an average MRI above 95.0 in/mi for Types A and B. For Type
1173 A, correct the deficient section to an MRI of 60 in/mi or less. For Type
1174 B, correct the deficient section to an MRI of 70 in/mi or less. For Type
1175 C, corrective work may be required by the Engineer for 0.1 mile
1176 intervals that have an average MRI above the threshold shown in
1177 Tables 401.03-4 and 5, Smoothness Pay Disincentives With MRI and
1178 Smoothness Pay Disincentives For Percent Improvement,
1179 respectively, as applicable.
1180

1181 If corrective action does not produce the required improvement, the
1182 Engineer may require continued corrective action, or apply payment
1183 adjustment as shown in Tables 401.03-4 and 5, Smoothness Pay
1184 Disincentives With MRI and Smoothness Pay Disincentives For
1185 Percent Improvement, respectively.
1186

1187 **(3)** The Contractor shall notify the Engineer at least 24 hours prior
1188 to commencement of the corrective work. The Contractor shall not

1189
1190
1191
1192
1193
1194
1195
1196
1197
1198
1199
1200
1201
1202
1203
1204
1205
1206
1207
1208
1209
1210
1211
1212
1213
1214
1215
1216
1217
1218
1219
1220
1221
1222
1223
1224
1225
1226
1227
1228
1229
1230
1231
1232
1233
1234

commence corrective work until the methods and procedure have been approved in writing by the Engineer.

(4) All smoothness corrective work for areas of localized roughness shall be for the entire lane width. Pavement cross slope shall be maintained through corrective areas.

(5) The remedial repair areas shall be neat, rectangular areas having a uniform surface appearance.

(6) If grinding is used on HMA pavement, the surface shall have nearly invisible grinding marks to passing motorist.

(7) Other methods may include milling and overlaying HMA pavement. The length, depth of the milling and the replacement material will be solely decided by the Engineer.

(8) The finished repaired pavement surface shall leave no ridges or valleys or fins of pavement other than those allowed below.

(9) Remedial repairs shall not leave any drainage structures' inlets higher than the surrounding pavement or alter the Contract Document's drainage pattern.

(10) For items in the pavement other than drainage structures, e.g., manhole frame and covers, survey monuments, expansion joints etc., the finish pavement, ground or not, shall not be more than 1/4 inch in elevation difference. Submit to the Engineer remedial repair method to correct these conditions for acceptance.

(11) Pick up immediately grinding operation residue by using a vacuum attached to grinding machine or other method acceptable to the Engineer.

(a) Any remaining residue shall be picked up before the end of shift or before the area is open to traffic, whichever is earlier.

(b) Prevent residue from flowing across pavement or from being left on pavement surface or both.

(c) Residue shall not be allowed to enter the drainage system.

(d) The residue shall not be allowed to dry or remain on the pavement.

1235
1236
1237
1238
1239
1240
1241
1242
1243
1244
1245
1246
1247
1248
1249
1250
1251
1252
1253
1254
1255
1256
1257
1258
1259
1260
1261
1262
1263
1264
1265
1266
1267
1268
1269
1270
1271
1272
1273
1274
1275
1276
1277
1278
1279
1280

(e) Dispose of all material that is the result of the remedial repair operation, e.g., HMA residue, wastewater, and dust at a legal facility.

(12) Complete corrective work before determining pavement thickness for HMA pavements in accordance with Subsection 401.03(I) – HMA Pavement Thickness Tolerances.

(13) All HMA wearing surface areas that have been ground shall receive a coating, e.g., a coating material that will restore any lost impermeability of the HMA due to the grinding of the surface. The coating used shall not be picked up or tracked by passing vehicles or be degraded after a short period of time has passed, i.e., it shall have a service life equal to or greater than the HMA pavement. The coating shall not decrease the pavement's friction value. The coating's limits shall be the full width of the lane regardless how small. If the remedial repair area extends into the next lane, then the repair area will be full lane width also. Extend the length of coating areas in order for the coating area to look like the rest of the road and does not have patches on it, i.e., make the road look uniform in color. The coating shall be of a color that matches the surrounding pavement. The areas receiving the coating shall not be open to traffic until it has cured enough so that it cannot be picked up or tracked by passing vehicles or degrade. Submit means and methods of the coating and type of coating to the Engineer or MTRB for review and acceptance. Do not proceed with the coating without acceptance from the Engineer.

(14) Recompact cold HMA, i.e., HMA that has reached ambient temperature is not an acceptable remedial repair method.

(15) Replace all pavement markings damaged or discolored by remedial repairs.

(16) Reprofile the corrected area and provide the Engineer the results that show the corrective action, i.e., remedial repairs were successful.

(S) Pavement Smoothness and Acceptance.

(1) Price and payment in various paving sections, e.g., 401 (Hot Mix Asphalt Pavement), shall be full compensation for all work and materials specified in the various paving sections and this section, including but not limited to furnishing all labor, materials, tools, equipment, testing, incidentals and for doing all work involved in micro milling, milling (cold planing), grinding existing or new pavement, removing residue, cleaning the pavement, necessary disposal of

1281
 1282
 1283
 1284
 1285
 1286
 1287
 1288
 1289
 1290

residue, furnishing of any water or air used in cleaning the pavement and any other related ancillary work or material or services. Also, it includes any remedial work, e.g., re-paving, surface grinding, application of a coating, curing compound, and replacement of damaged pavement markings.

(2) The contract price in those sections may be adjusted for pavement smoothness by the Engineer. The pavement smoothness contract unit price adjustments and work acceptance will be made in accordance with the following schedules.

TABLE 401.03-3 –SMOOTHNESS PAY INCENTIVES		
Category	MRI (in/mi)	Pay Adjustment \$ per 0.1 mi
Type A (Three or more HMA Lifts)	<30.0	\$580
	30.0- less than 35.0	\$480
	35.0- less than 40.0	\$380
	40.0- less than 45.0	\$280
	45.0- less than 50.0	\$180
	50.0- less than 55.0	\$80
	55.0- less than 60.0	\$0
Type B (Two HMA Lifts)	<35.0	\$420
	35.0- less than 40.0	\$360
	40.0- less than 45.0	\$300
	45.0- less than 50.0	\$240
	50.0- less than 55.0	\$180
	55.0- less than 60.0	\$120
	60.0- less than 65.0	\$60
	65.0- less than 70.0	\$0
Type C (One HMA Lift)	<40.0	\$280
	40.0- less than 45.0	\$240
	45.0- less than 50.0	\$200
	50.0- less than 55.0	\$160
	55.0- less than 60.0	\$120
	60.0- less than 65.0	\$80
	65.0- less than 70.0	\$40
	70.0- less than 75.0	\$0

1291

1292
1293
1294
1295
1296
1297
1298
1299
1300
1301
1302
1303
1304
1305
1306
1307
1308
1309
1310
1311
1312
1313
1314
1315
1316
1317
1318
1319
1320
1321
1322
1323
1324
1325
1326
1327
1328
1329
1330
1331
1332
1333
1334
1335
1336
1337

(3) Pay Pavement Smoothness Adjustment will be based on the initial measured MRI for both left and right wheel path, prior to any corrective work for the 0.10-mile section, except for sections that the Contractor has chosen to remove and replace. For sections that are replaced, assessments will be based on the MRI determined after replacement.

(a) The Pavement Smoothness Adjustment will be computed using the plan surface area of pavement shown in the Contract Documents. This Pavement Smoothness Adjustment will apply to the total area of the 0.10-mile section for the lane width represented by MRI for the same lane. It does not include any other price adjustments specified in the Contract Documents. Those price adjustments will be, for each adjustment, calculated separately using the original contract price to determine the amount of adjustment to be made to the contract price. Sections shorter than 0.1 mile and longer than 50 feet shall be prorated.

(b) For 0.1 mile intervals with an average MRI above the threshold shown in Table 401.03-3 Smoothness Pay Incentives, the Engineer shall apply a disincentive payment adjustment up to the limit shown.

- i. For Types A and B, payment adjustments shall be applied up to an MRI of 95.0 per Table 401.03-4 Smoothness Pay Disincentives With MRI.
- ii. For Type C, the payment adjustment shall be dependent on the average MRI of the pavement prior to paving activities
 - 1. If the MRI of the pavement prior to paving activities is 125.0 in/mi or less, the payment adjustment shall be per Table 401.03-4 Smoothness Pay Disincentives With MRI.
 - 2. If the MRI of the pavement prior to paving activities is more than 125.0 in/mi, the disincentive payment adjustment shall be per Table 401.03-5 Smoothness Pay Disincentives For Percent Improvement, and based on the percent improvement using the following formula:

$$\% \text{ Improvement} = (\text{Initial segment MRI} - \text{Final segment MRI}) \times 100 / (\text{Initial Segment MRI})$$

1338
1339

TABLE 401.03-4 –SMOOTHNESS PAY DISINCENTIVES WITH MRI		
Category	MRI (in/mi)	Pay Adjustment \$ per 0.1 mi
Type A (Three or more HMA Lifts)	60.0- less than 65.0	-\$100
	65.0- less than 70.0	-\$250
	75.0- less than 80.0	-\$350
	80.0- less than 85.0	-\$450
	85.0- less than 95.0	-\$550
	> 95.0	Corrective Work
Type B (Two HMA Lifts)	70.0- less than 75.0	-\$100
	75.0- less than 80.0	-\$200
	80.0- less than 85.0	-\$300
	85.0- less than 95.0	-\$400
	> 95.0	Corrective Work
Type C (One HMA Lift) (pre-paving MRI < 125)	75.0- less than 80.0	-\$50
	80.0- less than 85.0	-\$100
	85.0- less than 90.0	-\$150
	90.0- less than 100.0	-\$200
	>100.0	-\$250

1340

TABLE 401.03-5 –SMOOTHNESS PAY DISINCENTIVES FOR PERCENT IMPROVEMENT		
Category	Percent Improvement %	Pay Adjustment \$ per 0.1 mi
Type C (One HMA Lift)	≥ 40	\$0
	20.0- less than 40.0	-\$100
(pre-paving MRI > 125)	< 20	-\$200

1341
1342
1343
1344
1345
1346

(c) Incentives will not apply to areas where payment deductions or remedial repairs has been made for non-compliant work, e.g., low compaction, thin pavement, thermal segregation, low compressive or flexural strength, non-compliant alignment. Incentives will also not apply to

1347
1348
1349
1350
1351
1352
1353
1354
1355
1356
1357
1358
1359
1360
1361
1362
1363
1364
1365
1366
1367
1368
1369
1370
1371
1372
1373
1374
1375
1376
1377
1378
1379
1380
1381
1382
1383
1384
1385
1386
1387
1388
1389
1390
1391
1392

areas where corrective work was required to meet contract smoothness requirements, unless the pavement section was replaced. All areas where corrective work was performed shall be tested again to ensure the smoothness requirements are met.

(d) There will be no incentive price adjustments to the contract prices regardless of the pavement meeting the Contract Documents' requirements for incentive contract price adjustment, when 25% of the total area paved of that particular type of pavement on the project has failed to meet any of the Contract document requirements, e.g., smoothness, thickness, unit weight, asphalt content, pavement defects, compaction, flexural or compressive strength. Areas exempt from the smoothness requirements may not be included in the total area calculation unless it is non-compliant.

(e) For contracts using lump sum the method described in Subsection 104.06 Methods of Price Adjustment paragraph (3), will be used to calculate proportionate unit price, i.e., the Engineer's calculated theoretical unit price. This calculated proportionate unit price will be used to calculate the unit price adjustment.

401.04 Measurement.

(A) The Engineer will measure HMA and PMA pavement per ton in accordance with the Contract Documents.

(B) Engineer will measure additional State pavement profiling work when applicable on a cost-plus basis as specified in this section and as ordered by Engineer. The Engineer will issue a billing for the pavement profile work done for the time period with the invoices and receipts that the billing was based on attached to the Contractor for each contract item. The Contractor's pavement profile work required in this section will not be measured and will be considered incidental to the various paving items unless stated otherwise.

401.05 Payment. The Engineer will pay for the accepted HMA or PMA pavement at the contract price per pay unit, as shown in the proposal schedule. Payment will be full compensation for the work prescribed in this section and the contract documents.

(A) Price and payment in Section 401 – HMA Pavement will be full compensation for all work and materials specified in this Section including furnishing all labor, materials, tools, equipment, testing, pavement profiles and incidentals and for doing all work involved in grinding existing or new

1393 pavement, removing residue, and cleaning the pavement, including
1394 necessary disposal of residue and furnishing any water or air used in
1395 cleaning the pavement and remedial work needed to conform to the
1396 requirements of the Contract Documents.

1397
1398 **(B)** No payment for the Contractor's pavement profile work required in this
1399 section will be made. The Contractor's pavement profile work shall be
1400 considered incidental to the various paving items unless stated otherwise.

1401
1402 **(C)** Engineer will pay or deduct for the following pay items when included
1403 in proposal schedule:

1404	Pay Item	Pay Unit
1405		
1406		
1407	_____ HMA Pavement Speed Table, Mix No. _____	Ton
1408		
1409	_____ PMA Pavement, Mix No. _____	Ton

1410
1411 **(1)** 70% of the contract unit price or the theoretical calculated unit
1412 price upon completion of submitting a job-mix formula acceptable to
1413 the Engineer; preparing the surface, spreading, and finishing the
1414 mixture; and compacting the mixture.

1415
1416 **(2)** 20% of the contract unit price or the theoretical calculated unit
1417 price upon completion of cutting samples from the compacted
1418 pavement for testing; placing and compacting the sampled area with
1419 new material conforming to the surrounding area; protecting the
1420 pavement; and compaction acceptance. Maintain temporary
1421 pavement markings and other temporary work zone items, maintain a
1422 clean work site.

1423
1424 **(3)** 10% of the contract unit price or calculate the unit price when
1425 the final configuration of the pavement markings is in place.

1426
1427 The Engineer will pay for adjusting existing frames and covers and valve
1428 boxes in accordance with and under Section 604 – Manholes, Inlets and Catch
1429 Basins. Adjustments for existing street survey monument frames and covers will be
1430 paid for as if each were a valve box frame and cover.

1431
1432 The Engineer may, at his sole discretion, in lieu of requiring removal and
1433 replacement, use the sliding scale factor to accept HMA pavements compacted
1434 below 93.0 percent and above 97.0 percent. The Engineer will make payment for
1435 the material in that production day, if the Engineer decides to use a sliding scale
1436 factor, at a reduced price arrived at by multiplying the contract unit price by the pay
1437 factor. The Engineer is not obligated to allow non-compliant work to remain in place
1438 and may at any time chose not to use a sliding scale factor method of payment and

1439 instead require removal of the noncompliant pavement that is greater than 97.0 or
1440 less than 93.0.

1441

1442 In compliance with Subsection 105.12 Removal of Non-Conforming and
1443 Unauthorized Work remove and replace HMA compacted below 90.0 percent.

1444

1445 The Engineer will solely decide if the noncompliant work would be acceptable
1446 if a reduced payment for the noncompliant work is made. The Engineer is not
1447 obligated to allow noncompliant work to remain in place and may at any time choose
1448 not to use a sliding scale factor method of payment as a method of resolution.
1449 Instead, utilize the remedy allowed in Subsection 105.12 Removal of Non-
1450 Conforming and Unauthorized Work, requiring removal of the noncompliant
1451 pavement, shall be used.

1452

1453 Such a reduced payment, if made and accepted by the Contractor, shall be
1454 a mutually agreeable resolution to the noncompliant work being addressed. If it is
1455 not mutually acceptable, the noncompliant work shall be removed. If the reduced
1456 payment is acceptable; the Engineer will make the reduced payments for the
1457 noncompliant work in accordance with Table 401.05-2 - Sliding Scale Pay Factor
1458 for Compaction. The amount of tonnage to be reduced will be determined by the
1459 Engineer by using the initial cores taken on the mat. No additional cores shall be
1460 taken to determine the limits of the non-compliant area unless requested by the
1461 Engineer.

1462

1463 The Engineer, for determining the reduced tonnage for noncompliant work,
1464 will assume the level of compaction is linear and will proportion the compaction level
1465 from the last core that indicated an acceptable compaction level to the nearest core
1466 indicating a noncompliant compaction level to determine the calculated limit of
1467 acceptable compaction. The length will be the linear distance between the cores
1468 measured along the baseline. If there is no core that was taken for the shift's or
1469 day's work that were compliant then the limit will be the end or start of the day's or
1470 shift's work. The width will be the nominal paving width. Use the day's specific
1471 gravity of the mix to determine tonnage. The thickness will be the nominal paving
1472 thickness.

1473

1474 The total reduced noncompliant tonnage to be paid will be determined by
1475 multiplying the applicable percent of reduction by the computed tonnage of the
1476 noncompliant work. Percent of Quantity Paid shall be the percentage shown in
1477 Table 401.05-2 - Sliding Scale Pay Factor for Compaction. The reduced tonnage
1478 shall be used as the payment quantity for the noncompliant work. The reduced
1479 quantity paid that is used for the monthly payment will be arrived at by multiplying
1480 the contract unit price by the reduced tonnage.

1481

1482

1483

1484

1485
1486

Table 401.05-2 – Sliding Scale Pay Factor for Compaction	
Percent Compaction	Percent of Quantity Paid
> 98.0	Removal
>97.0 - 98.0	95
93.0- 97.0	100
90.0 - <93.0	80
<90.0	Removal

1487
1488
1489
1490
1491
1492
1493

END OF SECTION 401”

”

47 grade. Discontinue concrete placement when settlements deviate more than ±
48 3/8 inch from those indicated on falsework drawings. In such affected areas,
49 provide corrective measures prior to initial set of concrete. Remove
50 unacceptable concrete.”

51

52 **(VI)** Amend **503.03(C)(1) Construction** by revising the first paragraph
53 between lines 169 and 172 as follows:

54

55 **(1) Construction.** “Use wood or metal forms that are impervious to
56 moisture, non-staining to concrete, mortar tight and sufficiently rigid to prevent
57 distortion due to pressure of concrete and other loads, including vibration,
58 incidental to construction. Construct and maintain forms to prevent joints from
59 opening. Formwork joints shall be filled with approved material that is impervious
60 to moisture, will not stain concrete, and produces tight joints.”

61

62 **(VII)** Amend **503.03(C)(1) Construction** by revising the second paragraph
63 between lines 174 and 176 to read as follows:

64

65 “Unless otherwise indicated in the contract documents, place minimum 3/4
66 inch by 3/4 inch chamfer at sharp edges of exposed concrete surfaces. Give
67 girder and coping forms bevels or drafts to ensure easy removal.”

68

69 **(VIII)** Amend **503.03(C)(1) Construction** by adding the following sentence to
70 the ninth paragraph at line 209:

71

72 “The Engineer will stop the use of the forms or forming systems which
73 produce a concrete surface with excessive undulations until the Contractor
74 makes modification acceptable to the Engineer.”

75

76 **(IX)** Amend **503.03(C)(2) Form Lumber** by adding the following sentence to
77 the first paragraph after line 223:

78

79 “When requested by the Engineer, submit certificates verifying grade and
80 species of any piece of lumber which does not have a grade or species stamp.”

81

82 **(X)** Amend **503.03(D) Removal of Falsework and Forms** by revising Table
83 503.03-1 – Removal of Falsework and Forms at line 297 to read as follows:

84

85

86

“TABLE 503.03-1 – REMOVAL OF FALSEWORK AND FORMS

Railing and Barriers – 12 Hours Removal Time

Beams, Arches, and Other Members – 14 days Removal Time						
Slabs With Maximum Thickness of (Inches)	9		12		More Than 12	
Removal Time (Days)	7		10		14	
Walls, Columns, and Vertical Sides of Beams With Maximum Height of (Feet)	2	5	10	20	30	40 or More
Removal Time (Days)	0.5	1	2	3	5	7
Note: Where forms also support vertical or horizontal loads imposed on slab or beam soffits, use 14 days for removal time.”						

87

88

(XI) Amend **503.03(D) Removal of Falsework and Forms** by deleting the last paragraph between lines 329 and 334.

89

90

91

(XII) Amend **503.03(E) Loading** by deleting the words, “except abutment walls and wing walls” in line 337.

92

93

94

(XIII) Amend **503.03(F)(1) General** by adding the following paragraphs after line 419:

95

96

97

“At the time of placement, the concrete temperature shall not exceed 90 degrees Fahrenheit.

98

99

100

The rate of evaporation shall be measured by using the nomograph: ACI 308R Figure 4.1 Nomograph for Estimating the Maximum Potential Rate of Evaporation of the Environment Assuming a Water-Covered Surface in Which the Water Temperature Is Equal to the Concrete Temperature or by using an evaporation rate calculator e.g., Kestrel 5200 that has been reviewed and accepted by the Engineer. Use procedures as stated in ACI 308R Chapter 4 – Monitoring Curing and Curing Effectiveness. Approximately 30 minutes prior to the scheduled start of concrete placement measure the ambient air temperature, relative humidity and wind velocity with industrial grade weather monitoring instruments or with an evaporation rate calculator to determine the on-site evaporation rate. When the rate of evaporation is equal to or exceeds 0.05 lb/sq ft/h fogging shall begin. During the placement of the concrete recalculate evaporation rate every 15 minutes using new real-time data including actual temperature of concrete being placed. The concrete shall be fogged before, during and after finishing. Fogging shall start at the point the bleed water starts to evaporate. Fogging may stop when the curing compound application is complete. Fogging shall be accomplished by self-powered atomized mister, e.g. BossTek DustBoss, that creates a mist of water droplets above the concrete surface that

101

102

103

104

105

106

107

108

109

110

111

112

113

114

115

116

117

118 will float in the air. The droplets should float in the air, not fall on the concrete.
119 The goal is to humidify the air, not wet the concrete. Let the water evaporate
120 before finishing. If the concrete is fogger before floating, brooming or trowelling,
121 do not finish the accumulated surface water into the concrete surface or it will
122 weaken it. Do not allow water to run off the concrete surface. Adjust foggers or
123 pause its operation. Foggers shall not drip water on the poured concrete surface.
124 Point foggers into the air above the concrete pour not at it and not in the direction
125 of the incoming wind. It shall not be acceptable to use a water hose to spray
126 water into the air as a substitute. This will be considered adding additional water
127 to the deck surface. If plastic shrinkage cracks appear during the finishing, the
128 cracks shall be closed by striking each side of the crack with a float and
129 refinishing the concrete.”

130

131 **(XIV)** Amend **503.03(F)(2) Box Culverts** by revising the paragraphs from lines
132 421 to 429 as follows:

133

134 **(2) Box Culverts.** “Place and allow base slab or footings of box culverts
135 to set at least 12 hours before constructing remainder of culvert.

136

137 When constructing box culverts, place and allow concrete in walls to set at
138 least 12 hours before placing top slab. Provide appropriate keys in
139 sidewalls for anchoring top slab.”

140

141 **(XV)** Amend **503.03(F)(3) Box Girder Spans** by revising the title Box Girder
142 Spans at line 431 to read Sequence.

143

144 **(XVI)** Amend **503.03(F)(7) Hot Weather Concreting** by adding the word
145 “ambient” in front of the word “temperature” at line 560.

146

147 **(XVII)** Amend **503.03(F) Placing Concrete** by adding the following Subsection
148 after line 565:

149

150 **“(8) Certified Concrete Flatwork Finisher Requirement.** Perform
151 the placement, and finishing operations of concrete flatwork with a
152 minimum ratio of one certified ACI Concrete Flatwork Finisher and
153 Technician with 4,500 hours of acceptable work experience (certified
154 craftsman) per three concrete finishers (concrete finishers without ACI
155 Concrete Flatwork Finisher and Technician certification and 4,500 hours of
156 acceptable work experience) at each location having flatwork done. The
157 concrete flatwork shall be under the direct supervision of a certified
158 craftsman. Designate the certified craftsman who will be supervising and
159 responsible for determining the quality of the finish of the concrete flatwork
160 being performed. No flatwork shall be performed without the required
161 amount of certified craftsman present.

162

163
164
165
166
167
168
169
170
171
172
173
174
175
176
177
178
179
180
181
182
183
184
185
186
187
188
189
190
191
192
193
194
195
196
197
198
199
200
201
202
203
204
205
206

(a) Flatwork concrete is defined as any concrete work that requires tools or machines to be used during the placement and finishing operations of concrete. Concrete flatwork includes concrete work that requires a specified finishing, smoothness or rigid surface tolerances such as sidewalks, walkways, Portland cement concrete pavement, concrete white-topping, girder seats, pier caps, bridge decks, on-grade concrete slabs, approach slabs, concrete overlays, and concrete repairs which exceed one square foot per day.

(b) Areas that are not considered flatwork concrete are the top of foundations or structures that will have backfill material placed directly on the concrete surface.

(c) Submit copies of the craftsman’s current ACI certification 30 days before concrete flatwork begins for the Engineer’s review and acceptance. The Engineer has the right to require the removal, replacement, retraining and re-certification of a certified craftsman if that person does not, in the opinion of the Engineer, demonstrate the ability to place and finish concrete in accordance with the practices recommended in the ACI Concrete Flatwork Finisher Certification Program and to meet the finishing standards required by the contract documents.

(d) Any cost or impact to the contractor in providing, training, certification, retraining, replacement or re-certification is incidental to the contract items that require concrete flatwork.”

(XVIII) Amend 503.03(G) Joints by adding the following sentence after line 566:

“Prior to backfilling with earth or other materials against the joints, all construction, expansion, contraction, and control joints shall be waterproofed with flashing compound waterproofing as detailed in the Standard Plans.”

(XIX) Amend 503.03(G)(1) Construction Joints by revising the second paragraph between lines 572 and 579 to read as follows:

“Before placing concrete on substrate concrete at construction joint, the following work shall be performed:

(a) Remove laitance, loose particles, dust, dirt, impervious membrane curing compound, and any other material foreign to the construction joint and projecting reinforcement.

207 (b) Roughen horizontal construction joint by abrasive blast
208 cleaning or other approved methods to full amplitude of
209 approximately ¼ inch.”
210

211 (XX) Amend **503.03(G)(3) Contraction Joints** by revising the first paragraph
212 from lines 661 to 665 to read as follows:
213

214 “(3) **Contraction Joints.** Contraction joints in walls and in other
215 structures shall be spaced at not more than 20 feet on centers and shall
216 be spaced, at abrupt changes in height or thickness and at obtuse corners
217 unless otherwise directed by the Engineer.”
218

219 (XXI) Amend **503.03(I)(3) Flashing Compound for Joints** between lines 755
220 and 757 by deleting this subsection.
221

222 (XXII) Amend **503.03(L) Curing Methods** by adding the following paragraph
223 after line 794:
224

225 “The Contractor shall have the option to use curing compound SINAK WCE or
226 SINAK LITHIUM for bridge structures when approved by the Engineer. Six
227 copies of the manufacturer’s brochure and certificates of test results shall be
228 submitted. All work shall conform with the manufacturer’s recommendations.”
229

230 (XXIII) Amend **503.03(L)(2) Impervious Membrane Curing** by revising the third
231 sentence of the first paragraph from lines 818 to 819, to read as follows:
232

233 “Use ratio of at least one gallon for each 100 square feet of concrete
234 surface.”
235

236 (XXIV) Amend **503.03(L)(2) Impervious Membrane Curing** by adding the
237 following sentences to the first paragraph after line 819:
238

239 “The curing compound shall be applied to the concrete following the surface
240 finishing operation, immediately before the moisture sheen disappears from the
241 surface, but before any drying shrinkage or craze cracks begin to appear. In the
242 event of any drying or cracking of the surface, application of water with an
243 atomizing nozzle (fog spray) as specified in Section 503.03(L)(1), “Water Curing”,
244 shall be started immediately and shall be continued until application of the
245 compound is resumed or started; however, the compound shall not be applied
246 over any resulting freestanding water. Should the film of compound be damaged
247 from any cause before the expiration of 7 days after the concrete is placed in the
248 case of structures and 72 hours in the case of pavement, the damaged portion
249 shall be repaired immediately with additional compound.”
250

251 (XXV) Amend **503.03(L)(2) Impervious Membrane Curing** by revising the last
252 sentence of the second paragraph between lines 822 and 825 as follows:

253
254
255
256
257
258
259
260
261
262
263
264
265
266
267
268
269
270
271
272
273
274
275
276
277
278
279
280
281
282
283
284
285
286
287
288
289
290
291
292
293
294
295
296
297
298

“Do not apply membrane curing compound on surfaces to which concrete is to be bonded or to which waterproofing or epoxy is to be applied.”

(XXVI) Amend **503.03(M) Finishing Concrete Surfaces** by adding the following sentences at line 841:

“No additional water shall be added to the concrete surfaces in an effort to aid the finishing operation as the application of water to aid the finishing operation will result in the rejection of the concrete pour. Finishing aids or evaporation retarders may be used only with written authorization by the Engineer. Only finishing aids shall be used to finish the concrete surface and only evaporation retarders used to minimize the evaporation rate of the plastic concrete. These solutions shall not be used interchangeably.”

(XXVII) Amend **503.03(M)(3)(a)1. Machine Finishing** by adding the following sentences at the end of the second paragraph at line 1021:

“The screed rails shall be adjustable for elevations. The screed shall be set to elevations, with allowances for anticipated settlement, camber and deflection, as required to form the surface of the bridge deck to the line and grade shown in the contract. The Contractor shall install screed rail type such that the rails shall not deflect appreciably under the applied loads. The supports for the screed rails shall not be placed within the full width of the bridge.

The Contractor shall not apply any additional water to the deck surface in an effort to aid his finishing operation. The unauthorized application of water will result in the rejection of that day’s concrete placement.”

(XXVIII) Amend **503.03(M)(3)(a)1. Machine Finishing** by deleting the last three paragraphs between lines 1098 to 1111 and adding the following five paragraphs:

“Concrete bridge decks, concrete sleeper slabs, and concrete approach slabs shall be textured longitudinally by mechanical grooving. Grooves shall be cut into the hardened concrete using a mechanical water-cooled diamond edge blade saw device which shall produce straight uniformly spaced grooves spaced at 3/4 inch. The groove width shall be 1/8 inch plus or minus 0.02 inch and the groove depth shall be 1/8 inch plus 1/16 inch or minus zero inches.

If grooves cannot be cut into a continuous longitudinal operation, the continuation of grooves shall be aligned such that joints are not visible.

Before grooves are cut into the accepted hardened concrete, the upper 1/8 inch of the concrete surface for the bridge deck, approach slabs, and sleeper slabs shall be removed by grinding. Grooving shall be done after the concrete

299 has attained sufficient strength to prevent spalling and raveling, and before the
300 structure is opened to traffic.

301
302 A working drawing to control, collect and dispose of run-off water at an
303 accepted off-site facility shall be submitted to the Engineer.

304
305 The requirements of Section 411.03(N) Surface Test shall apply to
306 concrete bridge decks and concrete approach slabs. If additional grinding is
307 required to achieve the specified profile index, the grinding shall be performed
308 prior to the mechanical grooving and shall be done only in the longitudinal
309 direction.”

310
311 **(XXIX)** Amend **503.03(M)(3)(b) Sidewalk and Median Strip** by revising the first
312 and second paragraphs from lines 1182 to 1191 to read as follows:

313
314 **(b) Sidewalks and Median Strips.** “Provide final finish for concrete
315 sidewalks and median strips using wooden float and broom finish. Do not plaster
316 surface. Use edging tool with ¼-inch radius to finish outside edges of sidewalk.
317 Finish sidewalk as plane surface with 2-percent (allowable construction tolerance
318 of plus or minus 0.4 percent maximum) cross slope towards roadway. Test
319 surface of concrete sidewalk with 10-foot straightedge. Correct any deviation in
320 excess of ¼ inch.”

321
322 **(XXX)** Amend **503.03 Construction** by adding subsection 503.03(0) beginning
323 at line 1200 as follows:

324
325 **“(0) Tolerance for Concrete Construction and Materials.** Conform to
326 the stricter of tolerances specified in the specifications, ACI 117 Standard
327 Specifications for Tolerance for Concrete Construction and Materials, PCI
328 Tolerance for Precast and Prestressed Concrete, and PCI MNL-116 Manual for
329 Quality Control of Plants and Production of Structural Precast Concrete
330 Products.”

331
332 **(XXXI)** Amend **503.04 Measurement** by revising lines 1201 to 1205 to read as
333 follows:

334
335 **“503.04 Measurement.** The Engineer will not measure concrete when
336 contracted on a lump sum basis.

337
338 The Engineer will not make deductions for the volume occupied by
339 reinforcing steel, piles, floor drains, weepholes, timber bumpers, pipes less
340 than eight (8) inches, conduits, or expansion joint materials.”

341
342 **(XXXII)** Amend **503.05 Payment** by revising lines 1206 to 1223 to read
343 as follows:

344

345 **“503.05 Payment.** The Engineer will pay for the accepted quantities of
346 concrete complete in place and the accepted mechanical grooving and grinding
347 at the contract lump sum price for the pay items listed below and contained in the
348 proposal.

349
350 The contract lump sum amount paid shall be full compensation for
351 mechanical grooving; for grinding upper concrete deck surface; for the concrete;
352 for placing, curing and finishing; for furnishing materials including admixtures and
353 cement (including extra cement added to concrete deposited under water); for
354 furnishing and installing drains, scuppers, premolded joint fillers, joint seals,
355 waterproofing at construction joints, waterstops, pipes and conduits; for
356 furnishing and installing metal rockers, anchor bolts, structural shapes for
357 expansion joints and other similar items; for timber bumpers, forms, form lining
358 and falsework or centering, bearing pads, structural steel bearing plates; and for
359 equipment, tools, labor, materials and incidentals necessary to complete the
360 work.

361
362 The Engineer will pay for the following pay item when included in the
363 proposal schedule:

364 Pay Item	365 Pay Unit
366 Concrete for _____	367 Lump Sum
368 Blanket Grinding and Mechanical Grooving 369 for _____	370 Lump Sum

371
372 The Engineer will pay for excavation and backfill for foundations in accordance
373 with and under Section 205 – Excavation and Backfill for Bridge and Retaining
374 Structures and Section 206 – Excavation and Backfill for Drainage Facilities.”

375
376
377
378

END OF SECTION 503

1 Amend **Section 511 - Drilled Shafts** to read as follows:
2
3

4 **“SECTION 511 - DRILLED SHAFTS**
5

6
7 **511.01 Description.** This section is for installing, drilling, reinforcing, concreting
8 and crosshole sonic logging of drilled shafts in the locations shown on the plans.
9

10 **511.02 Materials.** Materials shall conform to the following:
11

12 **(A) Portland Cement Concrete.** Concrete shall conform to Section 601 -
13 Structural Concrete and Section 511 – Drilled Shafts.
14

15 The in-place concrete shall have minimum 28-day compressive strength
16 $f'_c = 5000$ pounds per square inch and maximum water to cement ratio of 0.45.
17

18 Proportion the concrete mix designs to get properties of high workability,
19 compaction under self-weight, resistance to segregation, and resistance to
20 excessive bleeding. The maximum nominal aggregate size shall be 3/4 inch.
21 The slump range shall be 7.0 inches \pm 1.0 inch for concrete poured into a water
22 free borehole and 8.0 inches \pm 1.0 inch for concrete placed under water or under
23 drilling slurry. Slump for the concrete shall be a minimum of four inches after four
24 hours from initial mixing or after the completion of the concrete placement,
25 whichever occurs later.
26

27 A migrating corrosion inhibiting amine carboxylate water-based admixture
28 shall be added to the concrete. The minimum dosage shall be 1.5 pints per cubic
29 yards of concrete.
30

31 The Engineer will permit superplasticizers.
32

33 At the time of placement, the concrete temperature shall not exceed 85°F.
34

35 The final concrete mix design shall be based on field trial batches to
36 determine the most suitable materials and proportions that will provide a concrete
37 mixture having the least amount of segregation and bleeding, and at the same
38 time provide the necessary workability to meet placing requirements.
39

40 **(B) Reinforcing Steel.** Reinforcing steel shall conform to Section 602 -
41 Reinforcing Steel.
42

43 **(C) Casings.** Casings shall have inside diameters not less than the
44 required diameter of the shafts and wall thicknesses specified or adequate to
45 withstand construction loads and stresses.
46

47 **(D) Cement Grout.** Cement grout used for setting the expandable load
48 cells and for filling the access tubes after completion of crosshole sonic logging
49 tests and cored holes, shall be prepackaged, non-shrink, and non-metallic grout

50 with the same strength as the drilled shaft concrete. The grout shall contain 10
51 grams of water-based migrating amine carboxylate corrosion inhibitor per 0.5
52 cubic feet. Cement grout used to fill cored holes shall be extended with 3/8 inch
53 pea gravel per manufacturer's recommendations.

54
55 **(E) Crosshole Sonic Logging (CSL) Test Access Tube.** Access tube
56 shall be at least 2-inch inside diameter, Standard steel pipe conforming to ASTM
57 A53, Grade B, Type E.
58

59 Access tube shall have round, regular inside diameter, free of defects and
60 obstructions, including all pipe joints, in order to permit free unobstructed
61 passage of 1.375-inch maximum diameter source and receiver probes used for
62 crosshole sonic logging testing. Access tube shall be watertight, free from
63 corrosion, with clean internal and external faces to ensure good bonding between
64 the drilled shaft concrete and access tubes. Fit access tubes with watertight
65 caps on bottom and top. Both ends of the access tube shall be capped at all
66 times except when being connected to another access tube. The end of the
67 tubes shall be undamaged and suitably prepared for the end caps and coupling
68 system adopted. Access tube coupling shall be used when extension of the
69 access tubes is necessary. The access tube coupling shall be watertight.
70

71 When crosshole sonic logging testing is indicated in the contract
72 documents, submit manufacturer's certificate of compliance for the acceptance of
73 the access tube.
74

75 **511.03 Construction.**

76
77 **(A) Qualifications of Drilled Shaft Contractor.** Be capable of installing
78 drilled shafts, conducting load tests and other related work as specified in the
79 contract and shall have the following minimum experience requirements below.
80

81 Because of the expertise required to successfully complete the drilled shafts
82 according to the contract, a qualified drilled shaft Contractor shall install the
83 drilled shaft. The drilled shaft Contractor shall have installed at least three
84 projects completed in the last three years on which the Contractor has installed a
85 minimum of five drilled shafts per project of a diameter and length similar to those
86 shown in the contract.
87

88 **(B) Experience Information.** Submit the following information to the
89 Engineer within 30 days after award of contract for acceptance by the Engineer:
90

91 **(1)** List of drilled shaft projects completed in the past 10 years. The list
92 of projects shall contain the names and phone numbers of owner's
93 representatives who can verify participation on that project. The drilled
94 shaft Contractor shall have installed at least three projects completed in
95 the last three years on which the Contractor has installed a minimum of
96 five drilled shafts per project of a diameter and length similar to those
97 shown in the contract.
98

99 (2) Name and experience record of the drilled shaft superintendent
100 who will be in charge of drilled shaft operations for this project. Drilled
101 shaft superintendent shall have minimum three years' experience within
102 the last 10 years in drilled shaft construction similar to type proposed.
103 Drilled shaft superintendent shall remain on the project for the duration of
104 the drilled shaft work. Drilled shaft superintendent who leaves the project
105 shall be replaced with personnel with equal or better experience. Submit
106 proposed superintendent's name and experience record for acceptance.
107

108 **(C) Protection of Existing Structures.** Prevent damage to existing
109 structures and utilities. Preventive measures shall include:

110
111 (1) Selecting construction methods and procedures that will prevent
112 caving of the shaft excavation and
113

114 (2) Monitoring and controlling the vibrations from construction activities
115 such as the driving of casing or sheeting or drilling of the shaft
116

117 **(D) Installation Plan.** At least 30 days before constructing the drilled
118 shafts, submit an installation plan for acceptance by the Engineer. This plan shall
119 at a minimum provide information on the following:

120
121 (1) List of proposed equipment such as cranes, drills, augers, bailing
122 buckets, final cleaning equipment, concrete pumps, and casing,
123

124 (2) Details of construction operation sequence and the sequence of
125 shaft construction in bents or groups,
126

127 (3) Details of shaft excavation methods including how the excavated
128 material from the drilled shaft will be controlled on site and removed; and
129 method of setting and extracting temporary casing,
130

131 (4) If the Contractor plans to use slurry, details of the methods to mix,
132 circulate and desand slurry,
133

134 (5) Details of methods to clean the shaft excavation,
135

136 (6) Details of reinforcement placement including lifting, support, and
137 centralization methods,
138

139 (7) Details of concrete placement including proposed operational
140 procedures for pumping method,
141

142 (8) Details of attaching the crosshole sonic logging test access tubes to
143 the reinforcing cage, details of testing access tubes for leakage after cage
144 installation and prior to shaft concrete placement, and details for grout
145 placement in the crosshole sonic logging test access tubes after testing is
146 completed,
147

148 (9) Details of required load tests, including equipment, procedures, and
149 recent calibrations for jacks or load cells supplied by the Contractor,
150

151 (10) Proposed concrete mix design, including expected strengths at 3,
152 7, 14 and 28 days. Concrete mix design shall minimize segregation and
153 bleed. Submit test results of both a trial mix and a slump loss test,
154 conducted by State-accepted testing laboratory using methods specified in
155 Section 601 - Structural Concrete. Tests shall demonstrate that concrete
156 meets 4-hour plasticity requirement at expected ground ambient
157 temperature and at highest expected ambient air temperature (two
158 separate slump loss tests required), and
159

160 (11) Test results from laboratory measurements of the ultrasonic pulse
161 velocity, performed in accordance with ASTM C 597, on 3-day, 7-day, and
162 28-day concrete trial mix samples described in Subsection 511.03(D)(10).
163

164 The Engineer will evaluate the drilled shaft installation plan for
165 conformance with the contract documents. Within 30 days after receipt of
166 the plan, the Engineer will notify the Contractor of additional information
167 required including if applicable, changes necessary to meet the contract
168 requirements. The Engineer will reject parts of the installation plan that
169 are unacceptable. The Contractor shall resubmit changes for
170 re-evaluation within 15 days. The Engineer will have another 30 days to
171 review all resubmittals. Procedural acceptance given by the Engineer
172 shall be subject to trial in the field. The acceptance shall not relieve the
173 Contractor of the responsibility to complete the work according to the
174 contract.
175

176 **(E) Trial Shaft Installation.** Demonstrate adequacy of proposed methods
177 and equipment by successfully constructing a trial shaft of the shaft diameter to
178 be installed, in accordance with contract documents. The details of trial shaft
179 shall be the same as for the production drilled shafts. Position trial shaft away
180 from production shafts, at location shown in the contract documents, or as
181 ordered by the Engineer. Drill trial shaft to the depth shown on the contract
182 documents.
183

184 CSL test access tubes shall be installed in the trial shaft as shown on the
185 contract to allow performance of CSL tests. Installation of the CSL tubes shall be
186 in accordance with Subsection 511.03(N) - Crosshole Sonic Logging (CSL) Test
187 Access Tubes and shall be incidental to the trial shaft work.
188

189 The trial shaft shall be subject to integrity testing using concrete coring to
190 evaluate the effectiveness of the concrete placement method proposed by the
191 Contractor. Coring shall be conducted by the Contractor in the presence of the
192 Engineer. The Contractor shall core a vertical hole beginning four feet above the
193 top of drilled shaft (cutoff elevation) and ending at bottom of drilled shaft at two
194 locations of the trial shaft determined by the Engineer. Core specimens shall be a
195 minimum diameter of 3.75 inches. The Contractor shall submit the coring
196 samples to the Engineer in core boxes properly labeled with the core number and
197 depths. Coring of the trial shaft shall be incidental to the trial shaft work.

198
199
200
201
202
203
204
205
206
207
208
209
210
211
212
213
214
215
216
217
218
219
220
221
222
223
224
225
226
227
228
229
230
231
232
233
234
235
236
237
238
239
240
241
242
243
244
245
246
247

If the Engineer rejects trial shaft due to deviation from requirements of the contract documents, alterations to proposed methods and equipment may be required. Drill additional trial shaft holes to demonstrate adequacy of altered construction methods or equipment at no increase in contract price or contract time. Once the Engineer has accepted trial shaft and has authorized construction of production shafts, do not deviate from accepted methods or equipment without the Engineer's written approval.

Fill trial shaft hole with concrete similar to the construction of production shafts, using method proposed for production shaft construction. Cut the concreted trial shafts off 24 inches below finished grade and leave in place. Restore disturbed areas at trial shaft sites to original condition, unless otherwise specified.

(F) Drilled Shaft Load Tests. Load test shall be performed at the location shown on the plans and be completed after the trial shaft but before construction of any production drilled shafts. This work includes all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary for conducting the bi-directional axial load tests and reporting the results, including the following: (a) the number of bi-directional expandable load cells as indicated on the plans, (b) materials to construct a stable reference beam system(s) for monitoring vertical and horizontal deflection of the drilled shaft during testing, supported a minimum distance of the reference system, (c) materials sufficient to construct and protect the work area, load test equipment, and personnel from inclement weather and sunlight, and illuminate area as needed, (d) electric power as required and suitable for lights, welding, instruments, etc., and (e) suitable optical survey equipment to measure the horizontal and vertical displacement of shafts during tests independent of the reference beam(s) and electronic equipment.

(1) Experience Requirements. The Contractor shall obtain the services of an experienced specialty Subcontractor with a minimum of three years of bi-directional load testing experience accepted by the Engineer to direct the assembly and instrumentation of the load cells, and to record all data and furnish results of the test to the Engineer.

(2) Materials. Materials for the drilled shaft load test shall conform to the requirements of Section 511.02 - Materials.

(3) Load Test Instrumentation. Provide instrumentation consisting of vibrating wire embedment strain gauges connected to a central data collection terminal; expandable load cell with readout device, and/or other equipment specified or indicated to measure movement of the top and bottom plates of the load cell, top of shafts, and strain at indicated locations within the shaft.

The embedment strain gauges shall be positioned along the test shaft at intervals shown on the Plans. The embedment strain gauges shall be attached securely to prevent movement from the installed location. The Engineer may require relocation of the embedment strain

248 gauges and load cell based on the submittals provided by the Contractor.
249 Each embedment strain gauge shall be capable of measuring strain to the
250 nearest 0.0001 inch/inch and shall be capable of measuring or
251 compensating for temperature. All embedment strain gauges shall have
252 been calibrated or certified as accurate prior to installation. Take
253 precautions not to damage the embedment strain gauges.

254
255 Load cell shall be a flat, hydraulically expandable load cell of a
256 minimum of 26 inches in diameter and capable of applying a load test of at
257 least 3,600 kips in each direction. The load cell shall be accurate to
258 within 1%, shall expand uniformly, and shall be capable of being installed
259 as described herein. The load cell shall have provisions for monitoring
260 displacements of the upper and lower plates to an accuracy of 0.001 inch.
261 The load cell shall have been calibrated or certified as accurate to within
262 1% of the true loads not more than six months prior to installation.

263
264 **(4) Construction Requirement.** The drilled shaft load test shall be a
265 bi-directional load test utilizing a hydraulically expanded load cell. The
266 bi-directional load test separately tests the shear resistance and end-
267 bearing of the drilled shaft by loading the shaft in two directions (upward-
268 shear resistance, downward-end bearing and shear resistance), using
269 hydraulically expanded load cell, or by loading the shaft using other
270 accepted methods capable of full separation of the shear bearing
271 components. The drilled shaft used for the load test program shall be
272 instrumented, as specified in Section 511 – Drilled Shafts, by an
273 experienced specialty Subcontractor accepted by the Engineer. Load test
274 shaft with excessive lateral extension (more than 12 inches) of the shaft
275 diameter will be rejected, unless accepted by the Engineer. Rejected load
276 test shaft shall be replaced at no additional cost to the State.

277
278 The Contractor shall supply equipment required to install the load
279 cell, conduct the load test, and remove the load test apparatus as
280 required. For the drilled shaft load test, the following set up procedure
281 shall be used:

282
283 **(a)** The load cell, piping and other attachments will be
284 assembled and made ready for installation under the direction of
285 the specialty Subcontractor, in a suitable area, adjacent to the load
286 test shaft, to be provided by the Contractor. The load cell
287 assembly shall be placed at the location shown on the plans in
288 conjunction with the construction of the reinforcing cage. The
289 Engineer reserves the right to adjust the location of the load cell
290 prior to installation.

291
292 **(b)** Advance the load test excavation to the maximum depth
293 shown on the plans. A successfully completed trial shaft that is
294 acceptable to the Engineer may not be used as the load test shaft.

296
297
298
299
300
301
302
303
304
305
306
307
308
309
310
311
312
313
314
315
316
317
318
319
320
321
322
323
324
325
326
327
328
329
330
331
332
333
334
335
336
337
338
339
340
341
342
343

(c) Clean the bottom of the shaft excavation after drilling is complete.

(d) Caliper testing shall be performed on the load test shaft to obtain profile shape data to be used to verify the shaft verticality and diameter. A minimum of eight data points around the circumference of the load test shaft shall be obtained at every one foot increment throughout the depth of the load test shaft. Caliper testing may be performed using a sonar-type caliper.

(e) Install the rebar cage assembly and load cell under the direction of the specialty Subcontractor and in the presence of the Engineer. The Contractor shall use the utmost care in handling the rebar cage/test equipment assembly so as not to damage the instrumentation during installation.

(f) After the installation of the rebar cage/test equipment assembly, the drilled shaft shall be concreted in the same manner as accepted by the Engineer based on the trial shaft installation and as specified for production shafts.

(5) Load Test Schedule. The Contractor shall notify the Engineer of the load testing schedule a minimum of fifteen calendar days prior to the commencement of load testing.

(6) Load Test Procedures. The load test shall be completed and the load test data evaluated by the Engineer for revision to the production shaft length before construction of any production shafts. The Engineer shall have at least 21 calendar days after submission of the load test report to review the load test result prior to providing the production shaft lengths. Load testing on the shaft shall not begin until the concrete has attained a compressive strength of 4,000 psi and aged for seven days.

Load the load test shaft using the quick load test method of ASTM D1143 except as modified herein. Apply the test load in increments of 50 to 100 kips, as directed by the Engineer. A load-deflection curve shall be plotted as the test progresses to avoid missing information near the failure load or to correct the precise load increments.

The load test shall be conducted to the maximum test load of 3,000 kips or plastic failure, whichever occurs first. Plastic failure is defined as the load corresponding to mobilization of side shear or end bearing and no further increase in load can be obtained.

The load test shall be held for a minimum of 4 hours each at the 2,000, 2,500, and 3,000-kip load interval to evaluate the creep effects, or at specific loads as directed by the Engineer.

344 (7) **Cleanup.** After completion of the load test, and at the direction of
345 the Engineer, the Contractor shall remove all equipment, waste and other
346 material that is not a part of the finished structure. The load cell
347 remaining in the shafts shall then be grouted through the piping provided
348 as a part of the load cell assembly. Use non-shrink, non-metallic, non-
349 gaseous grout of the same strength as the drilled shaft concrete.

350
351 After completing the test, cut off the load test shafts at an elevation
352 24 inches below the finished ground surface. The portion of the shafts
353 cut off and removed shall remain the property of the Contractor.

354
355 (8) **Replacement.** Load test shaft found inadequate because of
356 improper or failure of instrumentation, testing or construction procedures
357 shall be replaced and retested, at no additional cost to the State.

358
359 (9) **Reporting.** Report the test results as specified in ASTM D1143-
360 81 including, but not limited to, the following:

361 (a) Introduction;

362 (b) Drilled shaft installation procedure;

363 (c) Load test procedure and instrumentation; and

364 (d) Appendix which shall include report of calibration of
365 instruments, plan view location of the load test and test boring
366 related to the Project, records of subsurface exploration, records of
367 load test shaft installation, tabular and graphical presentation of the
368 load-deflection data of end-bearing and side shear from the load
369 test.

370
371 (G) **Construction Sequence.** Complete the excavation to footing
372 elevations before shaft construction begins. Repair the disturbances caused by
373 shaft installation to the footing area before pouring the footing.

374
375 When installing drilled shafts with embankment placement, construct
376 drilled shafts after the placement of fills.

377
378 Do not cap the drilled shafts before placing the fills as near to final grade
379 as possible. Only leave room for construction of the caps.

380
381 (H) **Construction Methods.** Excavate for shafts to the dimensions and
382 elevations shown in the contract. Its methods and equipment shall be suitable
383 for the intended purpose and materials met. Use the permanent casing method
384 only when required by the contract or authorized by the Engineer. Blasting shall
385 not be permitted.

386
387 (I) **Dry Construction Method.** The dry method includes drilling the
388 shaft excavation, removing accumulated water and loose material from the
389

393 excavation, and placing the reinforcing cage and shaft concrete in a dry
394 excavation. Use this method only at sites where the groundwater table
395 and soil conditions are suitable to permit construction of the shaft in a dry
396 excavation. The Engineer will inspect the sides and bottom of the shaft
397 visually before placing the concrete. Dry excavation is defined as an
398 excavation where maximum depth of water does not exceed 3 inches.
399

400 **(2) Wet Construction Method.** This method includes using water,
401 mineral, or polymer slurry to maintain stability of the hole perimeter while
402 advancing the excavation to final depth, placing the reinforcing cage, and
403 concreting the shaft. Use this method at sites where a dry excavation for
404 placement of the shaft concrete cannot be maintained
405

406 Reuse drilling water only if permitted by the Engineer and
407 contingent upon control of unit weight to no more than 62.5 pounds per
408 cubic foot and Marsh funnel viscosity to not more than 27 seconds per
409 quart, at the time drilling water is introduced into the borehole.
410

411 When locating drilled shafts in open water areas, extend the
412 exterior casings from above the water elevation into the ground. Install
413 the exterior casing to produce a positive seal at the bottom of the casing
414 so that no intrusion or extrusion of water or other materials occurs into or
415 from the shaft excavation.
416

417 **(3) Casing Construction Method.** The casing method may be used
418 when shown in the contract or at sites where the dry or wet construction
419 methods are inadequate. The casing may be placed either in a predrilled
420 hole or advanced through the ground by twisting, driving, before cleaning
421 the casing.
422

423 **(I) Excavation.**
424

425 **(1) General.** Make the shaft excavations at locations, and to shaft
426 geometry and dimensions shown in the contract. After acceptance by the
427 Engineer, adjust drilled shaft tip elevations when the material met during
428 excavation is unsuitable and/or differs from that anticipated in the design
429 of the drilled shaft.
430

431 Maintain a construction method log during shaft excavation. Submit
432 method log within 24 hours of shaft drilling completion. The log shall
433 contain information such as:

- 434 **(a)** Excavation diameters;
- 435
- 436 **(b)** Equipment used;
- 437
- 438 **(c)** Type of material excavated with the elevations of the
439 material;
440
441

- 442 (d) Rate of excavation including time drilling started, when
- 443 different material is encountered, tool changes, finish of shaft
- 444 excavation, and difficulties encountered;
- 445
- 446 (e) The description of and approximate top and bottom elevation
- 447 of each soil or rock material encountered.
- 448
- 449 (f) Elevation and approximate rate of any seepage or
- 450 groundwater; and
- 451
- 452 (g) Remarks, including temporary stoppages
- 453

454 Drilling of shafts within a horizontal distance of 3.0 times the shaft
455 diameter to the hole being drilled shall not commence until a minimum of
456 24 hours after the drilled shaft has been completed by placement of
457 concrete to the top of shaft elevation in order to avoid interaction effects
458 between adjacent shafts.

459
460 On projects with cofferdams, provide a qualified diver to inspect the
461 cofferdam conditions when the contract requires a seal for construction.
462 Before placing the concrete seal, the diver shall inspect the cofferdam
463 interior periphery. The cofferdam interior periphery inspection includes
464 each sheeting indentation and around each drilled shaft.

465
466 Any drilled shaft concrete over the theoretical amount required to fill
467 any excavations for the shafts dimensioned on the plans shall be
468 furnished at no additional cost.

469
470 Dispose the excavated material according to Section 203 -
471 Excavation and Embankment.

472
473 Furnish drilled shaft concrete required to fill excavations for shafts
474 dimensioned in the contract documents.

475
476 Do not permit workers to enter the shaft excavation unless:

- 477
- 478 (a) A suitable casing is in place.
- 479
- 480 (b) The water level is lowered and stabilized below the level the
- 481 workers will occupy, and
- 482
- 483 (c) Adequate safety equipment and procedures are provided,
- 484 performed and in place.
- 485

486 **(2) Excavation and Drilling Equipment.** The excavation and
487 drilling equipment shall have adequate capacity including power, torque,
488 and down thrust to excavate a hole to the maximum diameter and to a
489 depth of ten feet or 20% beyond the depths shown in the contract,
490 whichever is greater.

491
492 The use of special drilling equipment and/or procedures will be
493 necessary to drill through the cobbles and boulders. The Contractor shall
494 anticipate an abundance of boulders or various sizes in deposits classified
495 as "fill" and "older alluvium" on the boring logs and shall make allowance
496 for difficult drilling in his bid. In addition, the Contractor shall make
497 allowance for difficult drilling in his bid within the basalt rock formation.
498

499 The excavation and overreaming tools shall be of adequate design,
500 size, and strength to do the work shown in the contract.
501

502 **(a) Special Drilling Equipment.** When conventional earth
503 augers and/or underreaming tools cannot be used for drilling,
504 provide special drilling equipment including rock core barrels, rock
505 tools, air tools and other equipment as necessary to construct the
506 shaft excavation to the size and depth required. The use of special
507 drilling equipment and/or procedures will be necessary to drill
508 through the cobbles and boulders, and cost shall be incidental to
509 unclassified shaft excavation.
510

511 **(b) Sidewall Overreaming.** When the sidewall of the hole
512 has softened, swelled, or degraded, sidewall overreaming will be
513 required by the Engineer. Overreaming thickness shall be a
514 minimum of 0.5 inch and a maximum of 3.0 inches. The Contractor
515 may overream with a grooving tool or overreaming bucket. The
516 thickness and elevation of sidewall overreaming shall be according
517 to the contract or as directed by the Engineer. Overream sidewall
518 and place additional shaft concrete at no cost to the State.
519

520 **(3) Unclassified Excavation.** All excavation for the production
521 drilled shafts shall be designated as unclassified. The Contractor shall
522 anticipate the presence of cobbles and boulders within the depths of the
523 drilled shafts. The Contractor shall provide the necessary equipment to
524 remove and dispose of materials met in forming the drilled shaft
525 excavation, including installation of temporary casing and/or use of slurry,
526 as necessary. The Engineer will not make separate payment for
527 excavation of materials of different densities and character (hardness) or
528 employment of special tools and procedures necessary to excavate. The
529 Engineer will pay for obstruction removal separately.
530

531 **(4) Obstructions Removal.** Remove obstructions at drilled shafts
532 locations when authorized by the Engineer. Obstructions shall include
533 man-made materials such as but not limited to old concrete foundations
534 not shown on the Plans.
535

536 The Contractor shall employ special procedures and/or tools after
537 the Contractor cannot advance the hole using conventional augers fitted
538 with soil or rock teeth, drilling buckets, core barrels and/or underreaming
539 tools. Such special procedures/tools may include: chisels, boulder

540 breakers, air tools, hand excavation, temporary casing, and increasing the
541 hole diameter.

542
543 Drilling tools and any other equipment, lost in excavation, are not
544 considered obstructions. Remove the drilling tools and any other
545 equipment promptly. The cost due to tools lost in the excavation shall be
546 at no additional cost to the State including costs associated with hole
547 degradation (requiring overreaming or other methods) due to removal
548 operations or the time the hole remains open or any other remedial
549 actions needed to be performed to correct the situation caused by the tool
550 lost.

551
552 Natural materials used as fill materials such as cobbles and
553 boulders shall be anticipated at the site during excavation and shall not be
554 considered an obstruction regardless of the size and hardness of the
555 boulder. These natural materials used as fill materials shall not be
556 considered an obstruction under this section.

557
558 **(J) Casings.**

559
560 **(1) General.** Casings shall be steel conforming to ASTM A252,
561 Grade 3, smooth, watertight, and of ample strength to withstand both
562 handling and driving stresses and the pressure of concrete and the
563 surrounding earth materials. The inside diameter of the casing shall not
564 be less than the specified size of the shaft. The Engineer will not allow
565 extra compensation for concrete required to fill the oversized casing or
566 oversized excavation. Remove casings from shaft excavations except
567 when the casing is permanent. If the Contractor elects to pre-drill for the
568 permanent casing, the pre-drilled hole diameter shall be no larger than the
569 outside diameter of the permanent casing. The Contractor shall take
570 proper measures and shall be responsible for maintaining the tip elevation
571 of the permanent casing at the specified elevations.

572
573 When the shaft extends above ground or through a body of water,
574 the shaft may be formed with removable casing except when the casing is
575 permanent. Remove the casing carefully, where specified, so that the
576 casing will not damage the cured concrete. When the casing needs to be
577 removed after the concrete hardens in open water, design and submit the
578 special system for acceptance by the Engineer. The Contractor may
579 remove the casings only when the concrete attains sufficient strength
580 provided:

581
582 **(a)** The curing of the concrete continues for the full 72 hour
583 period,

584
585 **(b)** The shaft concrete is not exposed to salt water or moving
586 water for a minimum of 7 days after placement, and

587

588 (c) The concrete reaches a compressive strength of at least
589 2,500 pounds per square inch.

590
591 **(2) Temporary Casing.** The Engineer will consider subsurface
592 casing temporary unless shown in the contract as permanent casing.
593 Remove the temporary casing before completing the placing of concrete in
594 the drilled shaft. The Contractor may require telescoping, predrilling with
595 slurry, and/or overreaming to beyond the outside diameter of the casing to
596 install casing.

597
598 When choosing to remove a casing and substituting a longer or
599 larger diameter casing through caving soils, stabilize the excavation with
600 slurry or backfill before installing the new casing.

601
602 Before withdrawing the casing, the level of fresh concrete in the
603 casing shall be the higher of the following:

- 604
605 (a) Minimum of five feet above the hydrostatic water level, or
606
607 (b) Level of drilling fluid, outside the casing.

608
609 While withdrawing the casing, maintain an adequate level of
610 concrete within the casing to:

- 611
612 (a) Displace the fluid trapped behind the casing upward and
613
614 (b) Discharge the fluid at the ground surface without
615 contaminating or displacing the shaft concrete.

616
617 When temporary casings become bound or fouled during shaft
618 construction and cannot be removed, the Engineer will consider the drill
619 shaft defective. Improve such defective shafts according to the contract or
620 submit remedial repair for acceptance by the Engineer. Such
621 improvement may consist of removing the shaft concrete and extending
622 the shaft deeper, providing straddle shafts to compensate for capacity
623 loss, or providing a replacement shaft. Do corrective measures including
624 redesign of footings caused by defective shafts according to the contract
625 at no cost to the State or extension of the contract time. Any redesign of
626 the footing shall be submitted to the Engineer for acceptance. The
627 redesign shall be performed by a structural engineer and a civil engineer
628 specializing in the geotechnical practice both licensed in the State of
629 Hawaii. All remedial repairs shall have drawings and calculations signed
630 and stamped by both of the above licensed engineers. The Engineer will
631 not pay for the casing remaining in place as well as any redesign or
632 remedial repair.

633
634 **(K) Slurry.** If required, use only polymer slurry in the drilling process. The
635 polymer slurry shall have sufficient viscosity and gel characteristics to transport
636 excavated material to suitable screening system. The percentage and specific

637 gravity shall be sufficient to maintain the stability of the excavation and to allow
638 proper concrete placement.

639
640 During construction, maintain the level of the slurry at a height sufficient to
641 prevent caving of the hole. When a sudden significant loss of slurry occurs,
642 delay the construction of that foundation until an alternate construction procedure
643 is submitted for acceptance by the Engineer.

644
645 Premix the polymer slurry thoroughly with clean fresh water in slurry tanks
646 and adequate time (as prescribed by the manufacturer) allotted for dehydration
647 before introducing the slurry by pumping into the shaft excavation. The slurry
648 tanks shall have capacity for adequate slurry circulation, storage, and treatment.
649 Excavated slurry pits in lieu of slurry tanks will not be allowed without the written
650 permission of the Engineer.

651
652 Use desanding equipment to control slurry sand content to less than 0.5%
653 by volume in the borehole for polymer slurry. The Engineer will not require
654 desanding equipment for setting temporary casing, sign post, or lighting mast
655 foundations.

656
657 Prevent the slurry from "setting up" in the shaft, such as: agitation,
658 circulation and/or adjusting the properties of the slurry. Dispose of slurry in
659 suitable areas off from the project site.

660
661 The Contractor shall have the representative from the manufacturer of the
662 slurry product on site providing the technical support for the slurry preparation,
663 placement, testing and other quality control. Carry out the control tests using
664 suitable apparatus on the polymer or mineral slurry to resolve the density,
665 viscosity, pH, and sand content. Acceptable range of values for those physical
666 properties for two types of polymer slurries is in Tables 511-1 - Shore Pac GCV
667 (CETCO Drilling Products Group) IN FRESH WATER and 511-2 - SLURRYPRO
668 CDP (KB Technologies Ltd.) IN FRESH WATER.

669
670 Test the density, viscosity, and pH value during the shafts excavation to
671 establish a consistent working pattern. Make a minimum of four sets of tests
672 during the first 8 hours of slurry use. When the results show consistent behavior,
673 decrease the testing frequency to one set every four hours of slurry use.

674

675
676
677
678

TABLE 511-1 - Shore Pac GCV (CETCO Drilling Products Group) IN FRESH WATER			
Property	Range of Values *		Test Method
	Time of Slurry Introduction	In Hole At Time Of Concreting	
Density (pcf)	Less than or equal to 64.0**	Less than or equal to 64.0**	Density Balance
Viscosity (sec/qt)	33 - 74	Less than or equal to 57	Marsh Cone
PH	8.0 – 11.0	8.0 – 11.0	pH paper pH meter

* At 20^o C
** Increase by two pounds per cubic foot in salt water

Notes: a. When the Contractor does not need to control the bottom hole conditions or when tests show that other criteria are appropriate, the Engineer may modify the values.

b. When the contract requires desanding, the sand content shall not exceed 0.5% percent (by volume) in the bore hole as resolved by the American Petroleum Institute sand content test.

c. Submit changes for acceptance in writing by the Engineer.

d. Increases in the viscosity of polymer slurry beyond the above acceptable ranges during drilling may be allowed by the Engineer. However, increases in the viscosity of the polymer slurry beyond the above acceptable ranges during concrete placement will not be allowed. Use of other polymer materials that increase the cohesion of the soil material, or other construction methods to reduce the slurry viscosity just prior to concrete placement may be considered in-lieu of increasing the viscosity of the slurry.

679
680
681

682
683
684
685

TABLE 511-2 - SLURRYPRO CDP (KB Technologies Ltd.) IN FRESH WATER			
Property	Range of Values *		Test Method
	Time of Slurry Introduction	In Hole At Time Of Concreting	
Density (pcf)	Less than or equal to 67.0**	Less than or equal to 64.0**	Density Balance
Viscosity (sec/qt)	50 - 120	Less than or equal to 70	Marsh Cone
PH	6.0 – 11.5	6.0 – 11.5	pH paper pH meter

* At 20^o C
** Increase by two pounds per cubic foot in salt water

Notes: a. When the Contractor does not need to control the bottom hole conditions or when tests show that other criteria are appropriate, the Engineer may modify the values.

b. When the contract requires desanding, the sand content shall not exceed 0.5% percent (by volume) in the bore hole as resolved by the American Petroleum Institute sand content test.

c. Submit changes for acceptance in writing by the Engineer.

d. Increases in the viscosity of polymer slurry beyond the above acceptable ranges during drilling may be allowed by the Engineer. However, increases in the viscosity of the polymer slurry beyond the above acceptable ranges during concrete placement will not be allowed. Use of other polymer materials that increase the cohesion of the soil material, or other construction methods to reduce the slurry viscosity just prior to concrete placement may be considered in-lieu of increasing the viscosity of the slurry.

686
687
688
689
690
691
692

Before placing concrete in the shaft excavation, take slurry samples from the base of the shaft using a sampling tool. Extract slurry samples from the base of the shaft and at intervals not exceeding 10 feet up the shaft. Extract samples until two consecutive samples produce acceptable values for density, viscosity, pH, and sand content (within the values shown on Table 511-1 - Shore Pac GCV

693 (CETCO Drilling Products Group) IN FRESH WATER or 511-2 - SLURRYPRO
694 CDP (KB Technologies Ltd.) IN FRESH WATER).

695
696 Ensure that the bottom of the shaft does not accumulate heavily
697 contaminated slurry suspension. The heavily contaminated slurry suspension
698 could impair the free flow of concrete. When finding unacceptable slurry
699 samples, take actions necessary to bring the slurry as specified in the contract.
700 Do not pour the concrete until re-sampling and testing results produce
701 acceptable values.

702
703 Furnish the reports of tests required above to the Engineer on completion
704 of each drilled shaft. An authorized person of the Contractor shall sign the
705 reports.

706
707 During construction, maintain at the level of slurry not less than five feet
708 above the highest piezometric water pressure along the depth of a shaft.
709 When the slurry construction method fails, stop this method and propose an
710 alternate method for acceptance by the Engineer

711
712 The Contractor shall use and dispose of slurry in accordance with
713 applicable Federal, State, and County requirements.

714
715 **(L) Excavation Inspection.** Provide equipment for checking the
716 dimensions and alignment of each permanent shaft excavation. Determine the
717 dimensions and alignment according to the contract. Measure the final shaft
718 depths with a suitable weighted tape after final cleaning.

719
720 A minimum of 50% of the base of each shaft shall have less than 0.5 inch
721 of sediment at the time the concrete is placed. The maximum depth of sediment
722 or debris on the base of the shaft shall not exceed 1.5 inches. The Contractor
723 will measure the shaft cleanliness in the presence of the Engineer by methods
724 deemed appropriate to the Engineer.

725
726 Also, for dry excavations the maximum depth of water shall not exceed 3
727 inches before pouring the concrete.

728
729 **(M) Reinforcing Steel Cage Construction and Placement.** Assemble and
730 place the reinforcing steel cage immediately after the Engineer inspects and
731 accepts the shaft excavation before pouring the concrete. To prevent
732 deformation of the cage while lifting, brace the reinforcing steel cage until the
733 cage is set in it's final position. The reinforcing steel cage includes longitudinal
734 bars, ties, cage stiffener bars, spacers, centralizers, and other necessary
735 appurtenances to acceptably complete and place the cage.

736
737 Tie and support the reinforcing steel in the shaft so that the reinforcing
738 steel will remain within allowable tolerances given in Subsection 511.03(P) –
739 Construction Tolerances. Use the concrete spacers or other approved non-
740 corrosive spacing devices at sufficient intervals (near the bottom and at intervals
741 not exceeding 10 feet up the shaft) to ensure concentric spacing for the entire

742 cage length. Use minimum of four spacers, equally spaced around
743 circumference, at each vertical interval. The spacers shall be constructed of
744 accepted material equal in quality and durability to concrete specified for the
745 shaft, and shall be of adequate dimension to insure a minimum of four inches
746 annular space between the outer portion of the reinforcing steel cage and the
747 side of the excavated hole. Provide accepted cylindrical concrete bottom
748 supports to maintain the proper distance between bottom of the cage and base of
749 the shaft excavation.

750
751 Check the elevation of the top of the steel reinforcing cage and center of
752 cage location before, during and after pouring the concrete. When not
753 maintaining the rebar within the specified tolerances, make the corrections
754 needed to bring to within tolerances of the contract. Do not construct additional
755 shafts until after modifying the reinforcing steel cage support according to the
756 contract.

757
758 When the excavation at the bottom of the constructed shaft elevation is
759 lower than shown in the contract, extend at least half of the longitudinal bars
760 required in the upper portion of the shaft the additional length. Continue the tie
761 bars for the extra depth, spaced two-foot on center measured along the
762 circumference of the reinforcing steel cage. Extend the stiffener bars to the final
763 depth. These bars may be lap spliced or unspliced bars of the proper length.
764 The Engineer will not permit welding to the reinforcing steel. Unless the extra
765 depth of the drilled shaft is required due to modifications by the Engineer, the
766 additional reinforcing bars shall be at no additional cost to the State.

767
768 **(N) Crosshole Sonic Logging (CSL) Test Access Tubes.** Installation of
769 access tubes shall be in accordance with ASTM Standard Test Method for
770 Integrity Testing of Concrete Deep Foundations by Ultrasonic Crosshole Testing
771 Designation D 6760, except as modified herein. Install access tubes in all drilled
772 shafts to allow performance of CSL tests. Attach CSL access tubes securely to
773 the interior of the reinforcement cage as near to parallel as possible to the
774 vertical center axis of the drilled shaft in each drilled shaft and in the pattern
775 shown on the plans. Extend the access tubes from the bottom of the
776 reinforcement cage to at least 3.5 feet above the top of the shaft. The bottom of
777 the access tube shall be capped permanently. Joints required to achieve full
778 length of access tubes shall be watertight. Contractor shall take extra care to
779 prevent damaging the access tubes during reinforcement cage installation. Fill
780 the tubes with potable water to the top of the tubes as soon as the reinforcing
781 steel cage is installed. Check for leakage, misalignment, and damage before
782 placing concrete in the drilled shaft. Stop all leaks if present and repair any
783 damages or misalignment before placement of concrete starts. Check water
784 level as soon as possible after concrete placement (within 4 hours after concrete
785 placement) and fill with potable water if needed. Check water level in tubes
786 every day until CSL testing is completed. Top off tubes with potable water if
787 needed to prevent the debonding of the CSL tubes from the drilled shaft concrete
788 and thereby make any testing invalid. Keep the water level of the CSL tubes at
789 the top and under no circumstances shall the water level in the CSL tube go
790 below the concrete level. If leakage is detected after the pouring of the drilled

791 shaft concrete, monitor and top off the CSL tubes as often as needed to keep the
 792 water level in the tubes at the required level 24/7. Always reinstall the top
 793 watertight caps. Installation of CSL access tubes shall be incidental to the
 794 construction of the drilled shaft and shall be at no additional cost to the State.
 795

796 The completed drilled shaft foundations will be tested by crosshole sonic
 797 logging (CSL) after at least five days of curing time, but no later than 20 days
 798 after concreting. The CSL test will be performed by the Engineer. The
 799 Contractor shall assist in the testing by making all the shafts in the project
 800 accessible to the Engineer; provide electricity, lights and other needs whenever
 801 requested by the Engineer. Assistance by the Contractor shall be incidental to
 802 the construction of the drilled shaft and shall be at no additional cost to the State.
 803 The Contractor shall provide accurate data on the dates and time of concrete
 804 placement for each drilled shaft and the surveyed location of each tube. Also,
 805 provide the elevation of the concrete at the top of the drilled shaft. The Engineer
 806 will require a minimum of 20-working days after testing of any drilled shaft to
 807 accept or reject that shaft.
 808

809 The results of the CSL tests will be based on the percentage decrease in
 810 velocity as correlated to the following Concrete Condition Rating Criteria (CCRC),
 811 as shown in Table 511-3 – Concrete Condition Rating Criteria. Deviations from
 812 the following values shall be used for determining the Concrete Condition Rating.
 813

Table 511-3 Concrete Condition Rating Criteria			
Concrete Condition Rating	Rating Symbol	Velocity Reduction	Indicative Results
Good	G	0 – 10%	Acceptable concrete
Questionable	Q	10% - 25%	Minor concrete contamination or intrusion. Questionable quality concrete.
Poor	P/D	> 25%	Defects exist, possible water slurry contamination, soil intrusion, and or poor quality concrete.
Water	W	V=4760 – 5005 feet/sec	Water intrusion or water filled gravel intrusion with few or no fines present.
No Signal	NS	No signal received	Soil intrusion or other severe defect absorbed the signal, tube debonding if near top.

814

815 Shafts with test results other than "Good" will be tested in accordance with
816 Subsection 511.03(R), Integrity Testing.

817
818 After completion of the crosshole sonic logging tests and final acceptance
819 of the drilled shaft, all the access tubes shall be completely filled using a tremie
820 method of placement. Access tubes shall be free of debris and water before
821 filling with grout. Use non-shrink, non-metallic, grout of the same strength as the
822 drilled shaft concrete. Filling the access tubes shall be at no additional cost to
823 the State.

824
825 **(O) Concrete Placement.**

826
827 **(1) General.** Place the concrete through a concrete pump or other
828 means as accepted by the Engineer using accepted methods as
829 described below.

830
831 Concrete shall be placed in the shaft immediately after placing the
832 reinforcing steel.

833
834 Concrete placement for the load test drilled shaft shall be
835 continuous from the bottom to at least the top of shaft cutoff elevation and
836 until good quality concrete emerges above the top of the shaft cutoff
837 elevation. To ensure that the drilled shaft concrete is sound below the top
838 of shaft cutoff elevation, the trial and production drilled shafts shall be
839 poured four feet above the cutoff elevation and until good quality concrete
840 is evident four feet above top of shaft cutoff elevation. For the production
841 drilled shafts, the drilled shaft concrete four feet above the cutoff elevation
842 shall be removed no sooner than final set and 48 hours after the
843 completion of the production drilled shafts concrete pour. Final set shall
844 be when the concrete has reached a compressive strength of 1000 psi.
845 For the trial drilled shafts, the concrete four feet above the cutoff elevation
846 shall be removed after the coring is completed. Prior to removing the
847 concrete above the cutoff elevation, a circumferential diamond blade
848 sawcut 2½ inches deep shall be made at the cutoff elevation. Then the
849 portion of the drilled shaft more than one foot above the cutoff elevation
850 shall be removed with equipment no larger than a 90 pound pavement
851 breaker. Thereafter the remaining one foot of the drilled shaft above the
852 cutoff elevation shall be removed using jack hammers no heavier than 30
853 pounds for the upper nine inches and 15 pound maximum for the lowest
854 three inches.

855
856 A minimum of four and two, 6-inch by 12-inch concrete cylinders
857 shall be made for the compressive strength testing and unit weight testing,
858 respectively. Production shaft and trial shaft cylinders with compressive
859 strengths less than the minimum 28-day compression strength will be
860 considered defective. Production shafts and trial shaft with air-dry core
861 sample unit weight less than two pounds per cubic foot of the air-dry unit
862 weight test cylinders will be considered defective. Contractor shall submit

863 a corrective method plan for the defective shaft to the Engineer for review
864 and approval prior to their use.

865
866 The elapsed time from the beginning of concrete placement in the
867 shaft to the completion of the placement shall not exceed four hours.
868 Adjust admixtures accepted by the Engineer so that concrete remains in a
869 workable plastic state throughout 4-hour placement limit. A longer
870 placement time may be requested, and requests shall be submitted to the
871 Engineer for review and acceptance 30 days prior to the time the concrete
872 pour (with a longer placement time) is needed. Should the Contractor
873 exceed the 4-hour limit without obtaining prior acceptance by the
874 Engineer, the Contractor may be required to core the drilled shaft. These
875 drilled shaft corings shall be at no additional cost to the State and no
876 additional time will be granted.

877
878 Before placing the concrete, provide results of 3-day, 7-day, 14-day
879 and 28-day compressive strength tests of a trial mix and a slump loss test
880 at least 30 days prior to placement of concrete. Supply a concrete mix that
881 will maintain a slump of four inches or greater after four hours from initial
882 mixing. Conduct the trial mix and slump loss tests using concrete and
883 under ambient temperatures appropriate for the site conditions. The
884 ambient temperature used shall be the temperature at the elevation of
885 existing ground before any excavation started.

886
887 Drilled shaft mix design shall minimize segregation and bleeding.
888 The top surface of the drilled shafts shall be leveled, cleaned, and
889 roughened prior to concrete placement for the footing.

890
891 **(2) Monitoring Concrete Volume.** For each drilled shaft, prepare and
892 submit a monitoring record the next working day after concrete placement
893 has been completed. All monitoring shall be performed in the presence of
894 the Engineer or his representative. As a minimum, the monitoring record
895 shall consist of the following:

896
897 **(a)** A chart that is made up after drilled shaft excavation has
898 been completed and accepted by the Engineer and before concrete
899 placement has commenced. Indicated on the chart, depth of hole
900 plotted with theoretical volume of concrete to fill drilled shaft hole.
901 Plot concrete elevation (surface) along the vertical axis and
902 concrete volume along the horizontal axis.

903
904 **(b)** As concrete is being place, measure concrete surface at an
905 interval of approximately each cubic yard of concrete discharged.
906 Plot concrete volume actually placed at each elevation point. Use
907 this chart to determine if any necking down or enlargement of shaft
908 has occurred during concrete placement.

909
910 **(c)** Keep records of steel and concrete movement to document
911 the following conditions:

912
913
914
915
916
917
918
919
920
921
922
923
924
925
926
927
928
929
930
931
932
933
934
935
936
937
938
939
940
941
942
943
944
945
946
947
948
949
950
951
952
953
954
955
956
957
958

(1) When removing temporary or permanent casing, elevation of the top of reinforcing cage shall not rise more than 2 inches from its original elevation;

(2) As temporary casing is extracted, static level of fluid concrete shall not rise.

(3) Concreting by Pump. Concrete pumps and discharge lines for concrete placement in wet or dry excavations shall be used. Pumps and pump lines used to place concrete shall be of sufficient length, weight, and diameter to discharge concrete at the shaft base elevation. The pump and pump lines that will come in contact with concrete shall not contain aluminum parts. Discharge line shall have a minimum diameter of 4 inches and watertight joints. Concrete placement shall not begin until the pump line discharge orifice is at the shaft base elevation.

For wet excavations, use a plug to separate the concrete from the fluid in the hole until pumping begins. Remove the plug from the excavation or use plugs, made from a material accepted by the Engineer that will not cause a defect, if not removed.

The discharge orifice shall remain at least five feet below the surface of the fluid concrete. When lifting the pump line during concreting, reduce the line pressure temporarily until the orifice at a higher level in the excavation has been repositioned.

Upon removal of the pumpline orifice from the fluid concrete column and/or discharging concrete above the rising concrete level during the concrete pour, the Engineer will consider the shaft defective. In such a case, remove the reinforcing cage and concrete, the necessary sidewall removal specified by the Engineer, and repour the shaft. Costs of replacement of defective shafts shall be at no costs to the State and no additional time will be granted.

(P) Construction Tolerances. The following construction tolerances apply to drilled shafts:

(1) The center of the drilled shaft concrete and reinforcing bars shall be within 1/12 of the shaft diameter or 3 inches, whichever is less, in the horizontal plane at the plan elevation for the top of the shaft.

(2) The vertical alignment of the shaft excavation shall not vary from the plan alignment by more than 0.25 inch per foot of depth. The alignment of a battered shaft excavation shall not vary by more than 0.5 inch per foot of depth from the prescribed batter.

959 (3) After placing the concrete, the top of the reinforcing steel cage shall
960 be no more than 6.0 inches above and no more than 3.0 inches below
961 plan position.
962

963 (4) The cutoff (top) elevation of the shaft shall have a tolerance of ± 0.5
964 inch from the plan top of shaft elevation.
965

966 (5) The dimensions of casing are subject to American Pipe Institute
967 tolerances applicable to regular steel pipe.
968

969 (6) Design the excavation equipment and methods so that the
970 completed shaft excavation will have a flat bottom. The cutting edges of
971 excavation equipment shall be normal to the vertical axis of the equipment
972 within a tolerance of $\pm 3/8$ inch per foot of diameter.
973

974 (7) Casing diameters shown in the contract documents to outside
975 diameter (OD) dimensions. When accepted by the Engineer, a casing
976 larger in diameter than shown in the contract documents may be provided
977 to facilitate meeting this requirement. When using a series of telescoping
978 casings, size casing to maintain shaft diameters.
979

980 Drilled shaft excavations that cannot be completed within the required
981 tolerances are unacceptable. When accepted by the Engineer, corrections may
982 be made to an unacceptable drilled shaft excavation by accepted combination of
983 the following methods:
984

985 (1) Overdrill the shaft excavation to a larger diameter to permit
986 accurate placement of the reinforcing steel cage with the required
987 minimum concrete cover.
988

989 (2) Increase the number, size, or length of the reinforcing steel.
990

991 (3) Redesign the foundation.
992

993 (4) Other methods accepted by the Engineer.
994

995 The acceptance of correction procedures is dependent on analysis
996 of the effect of the degree of misalignment and improper positioning. The
997 Contractor is solely responsible to submit remedial repair procedures that
998 shall make the structure equal to or better than the original design. The
999 Engineer will solely determine if the remedial repair meets the
1000 requirements and is acceptable. A Hawaii Licensed Professional
1001 Structural Engineer and a Hawaii Licensed Professional Civil Engineer
1002 who specializes in Geotechnical Engineering shall stamp and sign the
1003 redesign drawings and computations. Correct out of tolerance drilled shaft
1004 excavations including engineering analysis and redesign at no cost to the
1005 State. No time extension will be granted for any impact to the critical path
1006 due to the Contractor's incorrect installation of the drilled shaft.
1007

1008 **(Q) As-Built Drilled Shaft Location.** The Contractor shall provide survey
1009 ties to all as-built location of all drilled shafts.

1010
1011 The Contractor shall notify the Engineer prior to performing the survey
1012 work and the Contractor shall survey the drilled shafts under the supervision of
1013 the Engineer or the Engineer's representative. A copy of the survey notes and
1014 the scaled plan locating all the completed drilled shafts in a given footing shall be
1015 submitted to the Engineer for review and approval. Submit accepted copy of the
1016 survey notes and the scaled plan as an electronic file, the Engineer will
1017 determine the acceptable format and media.

1018
1019 No form work for any footing shall proceed until the drilled shafts are found
1020 acceptable by the Engineer.

1021
1022 **(R) Integrity Testing.** Drilled shafts shall be visually inspected and tested
1023 for density, strength and soundness. Integrity testing will be performed on drilled
1024 shafts as determined by the Engineer. Integrity testing shall consist of partial or
1025 full depth concrete coring at drilled shafts determined by the Engineer. Coring
1026 shall be performed by the Contractor at the locations designated by the Engineer
1027 in the presence of the Engineer. The Engineer will solely determine if the cored
1028 shaft is acceptable or defective. Defective shafts shall be replaced and drawings
1029 and computations stamped and signed by a Hawaii Licensed Professional
1030 Engineer in the Structural Branch and Civil Branch (specializing in the
1031 Geotechnical field) shall be submitted for acceptance by the Engineer. The
1032 Contractor shall core vertical holes at locations and depths determined by the
1033 Engineer. The number of core holes to be done shall be determined by the
1034 Engineer. The core hole shall be accepted by the Engineer. The recovered core
1035 samples shall have a minimum diameter of 3.3 inches or 3 times the nominal
1036 maximum aggregate size of the concrete mix, use whichever is larger.

1037
1038 The measured unit weight of the air dry core samples shall not be less
1039 than two pounds per cubic foot of the air dry unit weight test cylinders.

1040
1041 Provide concrete cores properly marked in a core box with labels of the
1042 drilled depth at each interval of core recovery to the Engineer for evaluation and
1043 testing. The Engineer will be allowed a minimum of 7 working days for
1044 evaluation and testing of the core samples. The cored holes shall be filled with
1045 prepackaged, non-shrink, non-metallic, grout of the same minimum strength as
1046 the drilled shaft.

1047
1048 Cost of coring performed on acceptable production drilled shafts with no
1049 defects will be borne by the State. Cost of full depth coring of trial shaft shall be
1050 borne by the Contractor. Cost of coring performed on any drilled shaft that has
1051 defects shall be borne by the Contractor. If the drilled shaft in question is on the
1052 critical path, a time extension and the linear foot payment for coring will be the
1053 sole remedy given if the drilled shaft has no defects. The delay will be calculated
1054 from the end of the 20 working days review period of the cores to when the last
1055 core was taken. Contractor shall submit a corrective methods plan for the
1056 defective shafts to the Engineer for review and approval prior to their use. The
1057 corrective methods plan shall restore the defective drilled shaft to a condition

1058 equal or better that of a drilled shaft that had no defects. Do not begin repair
1059 operations until receiving the Engineer's acceptance of the corrective methods
1060 plan for that defective drilled shaft.

1061

1062 **511.04 Measurement.**

1063

1064 (A) Furnishing drilled shaft drilling equipment and furnishing instrumentation
1065 and collecting data will be paid on a lump sum basis. Measurement for payment
1066 will not apply.

1067

1068 (B) The Engineer will measure obstruction per hour in accordance with the
1069 contract documents. Once the Engineer authorizes compensation for obstruction
1070 removal, duration of obstruction removal, including time required for obstruction
1071 disposal, will be measured for payment. Depth of obstruction removed will be
1072 subtracted from total depth measured for payment under other applicable drilled
1073 shaft excavation pay items.

1074

1075 (C) The Engineer will measure load test per each in accordance with the
1076 contract documents.

1077

1078 (D) The Engineer will measure trial shaft holes per linear foot. The Engineer
1079 will compute length between existing ground surface elevation at trial shaft hole
1080 center, before drilling, and authorized bottom elevation of hole.

1081

1082 (E) The Engineer will measure unclassified shaft excavation per linear foot,
1083 along shaft centerline, including bells. The Engineer will compute length
1084 between plan top of shaft elevation to plan estimated tip elevation.

1085

1086 (F) The Engineer will measure drilled shaft per linear foot. The Engineer will
1087 compute length between plan top of shaft elevation and to plan estimated tip
1088 elevation.

1089

1090 (G) The Engineer will measure coring for integrity testing per linear foot. The
1091 Engineer will compute length between the bottom of coring elevation and the top
1092 of the shaft concrete elevation.

1093

1094 **511.05 Payment.** The Engineer will pay for the accepted pay items listed below at
1095 the contract price per pay unit, as shown in the proposal schedule. Payment will be full
1096 compensation for the work prescribed in this section and the contract documents.

1097

1098 The Engineer will pay for each of the following pay items when included in the
1099 proposal schedule.

1100

1101 **Pay Item** **Pay Unit**

1102

1103 Furnishing Drilled Shaft Drilling Equipment Lump Sum

1104

1105 The Engineer will pay for:

1106

1107 (A) 60 percent of the contract bid price when drilling equipment is on job site,
1108 assembled, and ready to drill foundation shafts.
1109
1110 (B) 40 percent of the contract bid price upon completion of drilling shafts, and
1111 placing shaft concrete up to top of shafts.
1112

1113 Obstructions Hours

1114
1115 The Engineer will pay for:
1116

1117 (A) 80 percent of the contract bid price upon completion of removing the
1118 obstruction.
1119

1120 (B) 20 percent of the contract bid price upon removing and disposing of the
1121 obstruction.
1122

1123 The maximum payment per designated obstruction shall not exceed 20
1124 times the unit cost for unclassified excavation.
1125

1126 Load Test at _____ Each

1127
1128 The Engineer will pay for:
1129

1130 (A) 100 percent of the contract bid price upon completion of bi-directional load
1131 test shaft installation/construction, caliper and load testing with reports, and other
1132 related costs to the performance of the load test.
1133

1134 Trial Shaft at _____ Linear Foot

1135
1136 The Engineer will pay for:
1137

1138 (A) 60 percent of the contract bid price upon completion of excavation trial
1139 shaft holes through to bottom of shaft elevation or as authorized by the Engineer
1140 and providing inspection facilities.
1141

1142 (B) 20 percent of the contract bid price upon completion of coring and
1143 backfilling holes..
1144

1145 (C) 20 percent of the contract bid price upon completion of CSL testing and
1146 restoring the site.
1147

1148 The Engineer will not pay for trial shaft holes that the Contractor failed to
1149 demonstrate to the Engineer the adequacy of its proposed methods and
1150 equipment.
1151

1152 Unclassified Shaft Excavation at _____ Linear Foot

1153
1154 The Engineer will pay for:
1155

1156 (A) 60 percent of the contract bid price upon completion of using drilling
1157 equipment, using special tools and drilling equipment to excavated shaft.

1158
1159 (B) 20 percent of the contract bid price upon completion of furnishing and
1160 installing temporary casing.

1161
1162 (C) 20 percent of the contract bid price upon completion of removing and
1163 disposing of excavated material.

1164
1165 Drilled Shaft at _____ Linear Foot

1166
1167 The Engineer will pay for:

1168
1169 (A) 60 percent of the contract bid price upon completion of drilling.

1170
1171 (B) 15 percent of the contract bid price upon completion of furnishing,
1172 assembling, and placing steel cage.

1173
1174 (C) 15 percent of the contract bid price upon completion of furnishing and
1175 placing concrete.

1176
1177 (D) 10 percent of the contract bid price upon completion of removing and
1178 disposing of excavated material.

1179
1180 Coring for Integrity Testing for Acceptable Drilled Shafts Linear Foot

1181
1182 The Engineer will pay for:

1183
1184 (A) 70 percent of the contract bid price upon completion of concrete coring.

1185
1186 (B) 20 percent of the contract bid price upon completion of filling cored holes
1187 with non-shrink grout of the same minimum strength as drilled shaft.

1188
1189 (C) 10 percent of the contract bid price upon completion of packaging the core
1190 samples and delivering them to the Engineer.”

1191
1192
1193
1194

END OF SECTION 511

1 Make the following section a part of the Standard Specifications:
2

3 **“SECTION 621 – ENHANCED VEHICLE CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM**
4

5 **621.01 Description.** This work includes furnishing labor, materials, tools,
6 machinery, and equipment necessary to install new Enhanced Vehicle Classification
7 (EVC) System(s) or restore existing EVC System(s), complete in place according to the
8 Contract. The Contractor shall make improvements as shown in the Contract, including
9 the following:
10

11 **(A)** Provide for traffic counting and classification operations by installing (new
12 stations) or replacing (existing stations) classification sensors (piezoelectric
13 sensors), vehicle detector inductance loops (loop sensors), conduits, cable
14 wiring, EVC controller cabinet(s), and electrical and communications service.
15

16 **(B)** Install (new stations) or restore (existing stations) the electrical and
17 communications service and metering facilities and pay for the electric
18 company’s and the communications company’s services when Contract
19 Documents call for these utility services. When Contract Documents call for utility
20 service connections, the Contractor shall coordinate service agreements with the
21 respective electric company, communications company, and the respective State
22 of Hawaii Department of Transportation (HDOT) District Engineer.
23

24 **(C)** For new stations, provide underground conduit systems including
25 trenching and structural excavation. Furnish and install pull boxes. Provide
26 backfilling and restoration work required to install the new EVC System(s) and
27 restore other improvements at the site(s). For station restorations, provide new
28 conduits, pull boxes, and necessary trenching, excavation, backfilling, and
29 restoration of other improvements as called for in Contract Plans.
30

31 **(D)** Coordinate work with and arrange for inspection of work by the Engineer.
32 Arrange for a representative from the piezoelectric sensor’s manufacturer to
33 supervise installation of piezoelectric sensors.
34

35 **(E)** Conduct required testing of the loop sensors and piezoelectric sensors.
36 Submit acceptance test procedures and criteria for acceptance test results to the
37 Engineer. Notify the Engineer a minimum of 1 week before the date scheduled
38 for testing.
39

40 **(F)** Turn over to the Engineer complete and operating EVC System(s)
41 according to the Contract.
42

43 Furnish and install incidental parts necessary to complete the EVC System(s) as though
44 such parts were in the Contract.
45

46 **621.02 Materials.** Electrical equipment shall conform to the National Electrical
47 Manufacturers Association (NEMA) Standards and this Contract. Materials and
48 workmanship shall conform to the National Electric Code (NEC), General Order Nos. 6
49 and 10 of the Hawaii Public Utilities Commission, ASTM standards, the ANSI, and
50 applicable revisions for all the above codes, standards, and local ordinances that may
51 apply.

52

53 **(A) Piezoelectric Sensors (Piezo Sensors).**

54

55 **(1)** Piezo sensors shall meet the following conditions:

56

57 **(a)** Be Class 1 BL Weigh-in-Motion unencapsulated
58 piezoelectric sensors.

59

60 **(b)** Have a minimum operating life of 1 year from the date of
61 acceptance.

62

63 **(c)** Meet the requirements as outlined in the FHWA document A
64 *Summary of Vehicle Detection and Surveillance Technologies Used*
65 *in Intelligent Transportation Systems.*

66

67 **(d)** Be of the length shown in the Contract Plans (or as
68 determined by the Engineer).

69

70 **(e)** Be manufactured complete with the piezo sensor lead cable
71 and the sensor itself as one integral unit.

72

73 **(f)** Have a 16 gauge, flat, braided, silver plated copper wire
74 center core that is spiral-wrapped by PVDF piezoelectric film.

75

76 **(g)** Have an outer sheath of 0.16-inch thick brass meeting CDA
77 260, as required by ASTM B587-19, *Standard Specification for*
78 *Welded Brass Tube.*

79

80 **(h)** Be approximately 0.26 inches wide, with a maximum
81 thickness of 0.063 inch (plus/minus 0.005 inch).

82

83 **(i)** Have insulation resistance between core and shield greater
84 than 500 megohms.

85

86 **(j)** Have a nominal piezoelectric coefficient greater than or
87 equal to 20 pC/N.

88

89 **(k)** Have designs and installation techniques proven reliable in
90 soil and environmental conditions similar to those in Hawaii.

91

92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100
101
102
103
104
105
106
107
108
109
110
111
112
113
114
115
116
117
118
119
120
121
122
123
124
125
126
127
128
129
130
131
132
133
134
135
136
137

- (l) Be able to withstand at least 1 million cycles.
- (m) Have a compatible interface with the electronics housed in the EVC cabinet(s) to perform the applications required for the EVC System(s).
- (n) Include all mounting hardware and PU200 piezo installation resin (or equivalent) used for installation.
- (2) The piezo sensor lead cable to the EVC cabinet(s) shall meet the following conditions:

 - (a) Be manufactured complete with the piezo sensor lead cable and the sensor itself as one integral unit.
 - (b) Be RG58 type, rated for underground direct burial.
 - (c) Have an outer jacket of 0.187-inch outside diameter.
 - (d) Have a nominal capacitance of at least 27 pF/ft.
 - (e) Be field measured so that the length of piezo sensor lead cable ordered suits the installation conditions.
 - (f) Be sufficiently long to reach the EVC cabinet(s) with at least an additional 12 inches extra slack within the cabinet(s). Excess piezo lead cable, beyond the 12 inches of slack, shall be trimmed in the field during installation.
 - (g) The maximum length of piezo lead cable shall be 300 feet.
 - (h) Splicing of the piezo sensor lead cable will not be allowed under any condition.
- (3) The supplied PU200 piezo installation resin (or equivalent) shall meet the following conditions:

 - (a) Be suitable for installation in both Asphalt Concrete (AC) and Portland Cement Concrete (PCC) pavements.
 - (b) Have a short curing time (less than 75 minutes) to minimize lane closure time.
 - (c) Be of sufficiently thick consistency to prevent 'running' when being applied in saw cuts.

- 138 (d) Be uniform in consistency such that particulate matter within
139 the sealant does not separate or settle.
140
141 (e) Be approved by the piezo sensor manufacturer and the
142 Engineer.
143
144 (4) An appropriate in-road temperature sensor shall be supplied to
145 provide temperature correction data for the piezo sensors. The
146 temperature sensor shall be an in-road sensor, as approved by the
147 Engineer.
148
149 **(B) Loop sensors.**
150
151 (1) Loop sensor wire shall meet the following conditions:
152
153 (a) Be polyethylene insulated.
154
155 (b) Be 14 AWG stranded THHN.
156
157 (c) Be 600 Volts rated.
158
159 (d) Be IMSA Spec. 51-3 certified.
160
161 (e) Be tested at the factory prior to shipment.
162
163 (f) Include installation materials and loop sealant for installation.
164
165 (2) Loop sensor home-run cables shall meet the following conditions:
166
167 (a) Be polyethylene insulated.
168
169 (b) Be stranded-tinned-copper 14 AWG.
170
171 (c) Be a 2-conductor cable.
172
173 (d) Have a stranded-tinned-copper drain wire.
174
175 (e) Be aluminum–polyester shielded.
176
177 (f) Be polyethylene jacketed.
178
179 (g) Be 600 Volts rated.
180
181 (h) Be IMSA Spec. 50-2 certified.
182
183 (i) Be tested at the factory prior to shipment.

- 184 (j) Be sufficiently long that the loop sensor home-run cable is
185 one piece that reaches all the way from the pull box (where it is
186 spliced to the twisted pair of loop wires) to the EVC cabinet(s). The
187 cable length shall allow for a service loop of 5 feet of extra slack in
188 pull boxes for each loop sensor home-run cable, and an extra 12
189 inches slack inside the cabinet(s).
190
- 191 (k) Splicing of the home-run cable to the twisted pair of loop
192 wires shall only be allowed at the closest pull box to the loop.
193 Splicing shall only be done using an accepted splice kit.
194
- 195 (3) The supplied loop sealant shall meet the following conditions:
196
- 197 (a) Be compatible with IMSA Spec. 51-3 loop detector wire.
198
- 199 (b) Be suitable for installation in both AC and PCC pavements.
200
- 201 (c) Shall have a short curing time (less than 75 minutes) to
202 minimize lane closure time.
203
- 204 (d) Shall be uniform in consistency such that particulate matter
205 within the sealant does not separate or settle.
206
- 207 (e) Shall be approved by the Engineer.
208
- 209 (C) **Backer Rod.** The Contractor shall use 3/8-inch to 1/2-inch diameter
210 backer rod to secure loop sensor wires at the bottom of saw cuts, as
211 shown on Contract Plans.
212
- 213 (D) **Conduits.** The Contractor shall use PVC-coated galvanized steel
214 electrical conduits for all new above-ground exposed construction, or as
215 directed by the Engineer. PVC conduits shall be used for all new
216 underground construction. All new direct-burial PVC conduits shall be
217 Schedule 80. New PVC conduits under pavement and at utility crossings
218 shall be concrete encased. New concrete-encased PVC conduits can be
219 Schedule 40. New trenched conduits shall conform to Standard Plan TE-
220 35 or TE-36 as indicated on Contract Plans, or as directed by the
221 Engineer. Installation of new conduits must comply with Chapter 6-73,
222 Hawaii Administrative Rules, 'Installation, Operation, and Maintenance of
223 Overhead and Underground Electrical Supply and Communication Lines,'
224 and be installed in areas under pavement before the new pavement is
225 placed.
226
- 227 (1) **Steel Conduits.** New steel conduits shall meet the conditions of
228 Section 712.27 (D), 'Rigid Steel Conduit PVC Coated' of the
229 Standard Specifications.

230
231
232
233
234
235
236
237
238
239
240
241
242
243
244
245
246
247
248
249
250
251
252
253
254
255
256
257
258
259
260
261
262
263
264
265
266
267
268
269
270
271
272
273
274
275

- (2) **Plastic Conduits.** New plastic (PVC) conduits shall meet the conditions of Section 712.27 (B), 'Plastic Conduits' of the Standard Specifications.
- (3) **Duct Sealing Compound.** New duct (conduit) sealing compound shall meet the conditions of Section 712.27 (E621.0), 'Duct Sealing Compound' of the Standard Specifications.
- (E) **EVC Cabinet(s).** New EVC cabinet(s) shall consist of ground-mounted cabinet(s) on reinforced concrete foundations. EVC cabinet(s) shall be a Caltrans Traffic Signal 332A cabinet or equivalent, with EIA 19" rack, shelf, 30-amp main circuit breaker, surge-protected 6-outlet power strip, LED overhead lights, front and rear door vents with reusable/washable metal filters, and thermostat-controlled fan, as specified on Contract Plans. Cabinet(s) and shall be capable of housing all required communications and control equipment necessary for the EVC System. Cabinet(s) shall be powder coated in anti-graffiti forest green color on the exterior. Contractor shall furnish and install power cables from the Hawaiian Electric Company service point.
- (F) **Pre-cast Foundation(s).** Pre-cast foundation(s) for cabinets and poles shall only be used if accepted by the Engineer. Manufacturer's brochures, catalog cuts, and shop drawings of any pre-cast foundations to be used shall be submitted to the Engineer for acceptance as specified in Section 621.03 (A) Equipment List and Drawings below.
- (G) **Wired Telecommunications.** When required by the Contract Documents, if the site has available wired telecommunications service, the service connection facilities shall be supplied (new stations) or restored (existing stations) in accordance with the respective telecommunications service company's requirements. The Contractor shall make any necessary arrangements with the telecommunications company for new or restoration of services.
- (H) **Power.** Power connections and service to new cabinet(s) shall be provided according to the Contract Documents.

 - (1) **Power from Utility Company.** When required by the Contract Documents, if the site has available electrical utility service, the electric power connection facilities shall be supplied in accordance with the respective power company's requirements for electrical service.
 - (2) **Power from Solar Assembly.** When required by the Contract Documents, solar power equipment and connection facilities shall

276 be provided to the cabinet(s) at locations specified in the Contract
277 Plans.

278
279 **(a)** Power to cabinet(s) shall be provided via sealed 12-Volt
280 batteries connected to a solar panel and pole assembly.

281
282 **(b)** The Contractor shall provide a complete solar panel
283 assembly for each cabinet or as required by the Contract
284 Documents. A complete solar panel assembly consists of a
285 minimum of one solar panel, associated supports, pole, concrete
286 foundation, and wiring to the EVC cabinet(s).

287
288 **(c)** Each solar power system shall include surge protection,
289 grounding according to NEC requirements, and a battery charge
290 controller.

291
292 **(d)** The solar power system shall have enough reserve capacity
293 to operate the station uninterrupted for up to three days without
294 charging by the solar panels.

295
296 **(e)** The Contractor shall submit shop drawings of a complete
297 solar power system to the Engineer prior to ordering materials as
298 specified in section 621.03 (A) Equipment List and Drawings below.
299 Manufacturer's brochures, catalog cuts, and shop drawings
300 submitted to the Engineer for acceptance shall include information
301 on pole, foundation, wiring, grounding, solar panels, and associated
302 supports. Solar assembly pole(s) shall be located no more than 20
303 feet away from cabinet(s).

304
305 **(l) Excavation Warning Signs.** The Contractor shall furnish and install new
306 warning signs and appropriate mounting adjacent to the sensor lead cable
307 runs or as close as possible to the cables as indicated in the Contract
308 Plans. Signs and mountings shall conform to the requirements of Section
309 750.02, 'Sign Posts' of the Standard Specifications and Standard Plan TE-
310 01, and Contract Documents. For station restorations, existing sign posts
311 are to remain and shall be reused if possible. If new sign posts are
312 required, they shall be no more than 20 feet from cabinet(s). New signs
313 shall be 12 inches wide by 18 inches high. Bottom of signs shall be at 8
314 feet above finished grade. New sign text shall read as follows, where
315 'XXXXXX' shall be replaced with the existing station short name used by
316 Highway Planning Branch. For new stations, new signs shall leave a blank
317 space of length 'XXXXXX' so that once the station short name has been
318 determined, it can be added to the sign later:

319
320 **WARNING**
321 **BURIED TRAFFIC MONITORING LINES**

322 NOTIFY HWY-PLANNING BRANCH AT
323 (808) 587-6352 BEFORE DIGGING OR EXCAVATION
324 STATION XXXXXX
325

326 The first line shall be a minimum of 2 inches in height. Subsequent lines of
327 text shall be 1 inch in height. No border is necessary, but a minimum
328 margin of 1/4 inch shall be maintained. For the letters and background,
329 use black and yellow (non-retro-reflective) paints, respectively. The first
330 line of text shall be centered. Subsequent lines shall also be centered;
331 however, the Contractor shall have the option to move the wording within
332 these lines to allow for best fit. Details of the furnished warning signs,
333 mounting, and sign post shall be submitted to the Engineer for acceptance
334 prior to purchase. Furnishing warning signs, mounting, and installation
335 shall be incidental to the Contract.
336

337 **(J) Pull Boxes and Covers.** For station restorations, existing pull boxes are
338 to remain and shall be reused if possible. New pull boxes, if required, shall
339 be furnished and installed as indicated in the Contract Documents. New
340 pull box covers shall be labeled TRAFFIC MONITORING. This label shall
341 be cast or molded into the cover material and not just marked on the cover
342 surface. Pull boxes and covers shall be rated for the largest potential
343 vertical vehicle loads they might encounter, according to their position in
344 shoulders, medians, and traffic lanes, or by direction of the Engineer and
345 as shown in the Contract Documents.
346

347 **(K) Other Materials.** Other materials shall meet the requirements specified in
348 the following sections of the Standard Specifications:
349

350	Structural Concrete	Section 601
351		
352	Reinforcing Steel	Section 602
353		
354	Trench Backfill Material	Subsection 703.21
355		
356	Concrete Pull Box	Subsection 712.06 (B)
357		

358 **621.03 Construction Requirements.**
359

360 **(A) Equipment List and Drawings.** Within 7 days following Contract award,
361 two copies of materials and equipment purchase requisition, including
362 copies of the equipment list, manufacturer's brochures, catalog cuts, and
363 shop drawings shall be submitted to the Engineer for acceptance.
364

365 Materials and equipment shall be ordered immediately upon acceptance
366 by the Engineer. If the Contract award is rescinded by the Department
367 after ordering of materials and equipment, the Department will purchase

368 ordered materials and equipment at cost based on invoices. Purchase
369 price will include transportation cost and applicable State excise taxes.
370 Purchase price will not include profit.

371
372 Upon completion and acceptance of work, an 'As Built' or corrected plan
373 shall be submitted, showing in detail any construction changes per Section
374 648, 'Field Posted Drawings' of the Standard Specifications.

375
376 **(B) Excavation and Backfill.** Excavation and backfill shall be made in
377 accordance with Section 204, 'Excavation and Backfill for Miscellaneous
378 Facilities' of the Standard Specifications. Material from excavation shall be
379 placed to prevent damage and obstruction to vehicular and pedestrian
380 traffic and interference with surface drainage.

381
382 **(C) Installation.** The Contractor shall notify the State and schedule a meeting
383 at least 14 days prior to any construction activity. The State shall install
384 new traffic monitoring equipment and electronics in the cabinet(s) after the
385 installation of the cabinet(s) and sensors. Installation of sensors shall
386 occur after any and all grinding and or milling of the finished pavement
387 surface and after application of pavement markings or striping.

388
389 **(1) Piezo Sensors.**

390
391 **(a)** Installation shall be supervised by the piezo sensor
392 manufacturer's representative.

393
394 **(b)** Construction shall reflect the number and configuration for
395 the piezo sensors as shown in the Contract Plans.

396
397 **(c)** Piezo sensors and leads shall be installed at least 18 inches
398 away from cracks, potholes or joints within the pavement. If the
399 finished pavement at the installation site has cracks, potholes or
400 joints, the number and configuration of piezo sensors shall be
401 modified.

402
403 **(d)** Piezo sensors shall be installed within the roadway, two
404 each per lane, in both traffic directions. Refer to the configuration
405 shown in the Contract Plans.

406
407 **(e)** If the sensor configuration needs to be modified, the
408 Contractor shall inform the State 14 days before the start of
409 construction and submit Shop Drawings of the revised configuration
410 for approval.

411
412 **(f)** A 3/4-inch thick saw blade shall be used to make 3/4-inch
413 wide by 2-inch deep slots for piezo sensors in a single pass of the

414 saw. The slots shall be made as shown in the Contract Plans, or as
415 approved by the Engineer.

416
417 **(g)** A 3/8-inch thick saw blade shall be used to make 3/8-inch
418 wide by 4-inch deep slots (unless shown otherwise on the Contract
419 Plans or by direction of the Engineer) for the piezo sensor lead
420 cables. The transition from the 2-inch deep sensor slot to the 4-inch
421 deep lead cable slot shall be smooth and gradual to prevent a
422 sharp edge under where the lead cable and sensor connect.

423
424 **(h)** Saw cuts shall be made by wet cutting. Dry cutting shall not
425 be allowed.

426
427 **(i)** Dust, dirt, and refuse shall be collected and cleaned away
428 promptly after saw cutting is done. The slots shall be cleared by
429 water applied by pressure washer. Residual water within the slots
430 shall be vacuumed by use of a wet/dry vacuum. The slots shall then
431 be dried by air compressor. Flame torches shall not be used to dry
432 slots. After the slots are dried, any remaining debris stuck within the
433 slot must be removed. The slots must be completely clean and dry
434 before inserting the piezo sensors and lead-in cables.

435
436 **(j)** The slots shall be inspected before inserting piezo sensors.
437 If any additional debris or moisture is observed, compressed air
438 shall be used to dry the slots and remove any additional debris
439 before proceeding with installation.

440
441 **(k)** Piezo sensors shall be tested and cleaned prior to
442 installation according to manufacturer's installation instructions.

443
444 **(l)** Piezo sensors shall be laid in slots at 1-1/4 inch below the
445 surface of the roadway or as recommended by the manufacturer.
446 Piezo sensors shall be installed straight and flat in slots. Piezo
447 sensors shall be secured in place along the entire length of sensors
448 in slots by seating them in slots with the clips provided in the sensor
449 kit from the manufacturer. The clips shall be spaced 6 inches apart.

450
451 **(m)** Voids of the piezo sensor slots shall be filled with PU200
452 piezo installation resin (or equivalent) so that the piezo sensors are
453 fully encapsulated. The PU200 piezo installation resin (or
454 equivalent) shall be prepared in accordance with the manufacturer's
455 instructions and shall result in a finish approximately 1/16 inch
456 above the surface of pavement. Once the resin has sufficiently
457 hardened, the sealant shall be ground flush with the road surface
458 along the saw cut.

459

460
461
462
463
464
465
466
467
468
469
470
471
472
473
474
475
476
477
478
479
480
481
482
483
484
485
486
487
488
489
490
491
492
493
494
495
496
497
498
499
500
501
502
503
504
505

- (n) Hot tar shall not be used.
- (o) A service loop of 5 feet of extra slack shall be provided in pull boxes for each piezo lead cable.
- (p) Piezo lead cables shall be trimmed after allowing for an extra 12 inches of slack inside the EVC cabinet(s). Splicing to lengthen the piezo lead cable shall not be allowed under any condition. Spliced piezo lead cables will be rejected.
- (q) The in-road temperature sensor shall be installed according to the manufacturer's instructions, as approved by the Engineer. The temperature sensor shall be placed in a 3/8-inch wide by 2-inch deep slot at 1-1/4 inch below the road surface. The slot for the temperature sensor and its lead shall be cut by wet cutting, then cleaned and prepared in the same way as the slots for the piezo sensors.
- (r) Adequate power shall be provided for all test equipment to meet the detailed and specific requirements of the manufacturer for all tests required for certification and acceptance. All necessary equipment to perform the required tests shall be provided.
- (s) Traffic shall not be allowed on the completed system until the manufacturer's representative approves all conditions of the installation with the acceptance by the Engineer. Thereafter, testing in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements shall be completed before public traffic is allowed.
- (t) HDOT or its representative will make the final connection inside the EVC cabinet(s); however, the Contractor shall label the wires clearly to identify traffic direction, lane number, and sequence of piezo sensors in each lane per direction. All labeling at pull boxes and cabinet(s) must be consistent.

(2) Loop Sensors.

- (a) Construction shall reflect the number and configuration of loop sensors as shown in the Contract Plans.
- (b) Loop sensors and their leads shall be installed at least 18 inches away from cracks, potholes or joints within the pavement. If the finished pavement at the installation site has cracks, potholes or joints, the number and configuration of the loop sensors shall be modified.

506
507
508
509
510
511
512
513
514
515
516
517
518
519
520
521
522
523
524
525
526
527
528
529
530
531
532
533
534
535
536
537
538
539
540
541
542
543
544
545
546
547
548
549
550
551

(c) If the configuration of the loop sensors needs to be modified, the Contractor shall inform the State 14 days before construction and submit Shop Drawings of the revised configuration for approval.

(d) Loops shall be installed two per lane to measure speed and length of the vehicles and to classify vehicles in conjunction with the axle detectors (piezo sensors). Loops shall be installed such that they are centered in lanes relative to the final lane striping. Loop sensors not installed centered in each lane relative to the final lane striping shall be replaced correctly at no additional cost to the State. If lanes are less than 12 feet in width, the loop configuration may be specified as a non-centered configuration or otherwise modified. Refer to the configuration specified in the Contract Plans.

(e) A 3/8-inch thick blade shall be used to make 4-inch deep (or as shown on Contract Plans) slots for the loop sensors and their leads.

(f) Saw cuts shall be made by wet cutting. Dry cutting shall not be allowed.

(g) Dust, dirt, and refuse shall be cleaned away promptly after saw cutting is done. The slots shall be cleared by water applied by pressure washer. Residual water within the slots shall then be vacuumed using a wet/dry vacuum. The slots shall then be dried by air compressor. After the slots are dried, any debris stuck within the slot must be removed.

(h) The loop sensor and lead wire shall be one continuous piece of wire, from the pull box, to the loop, around it four turns, and back to the pull box. The size of loops is specified in the Contract Plans.

(i) After laying the four turns of loop sensor wire in the bottom of the 4-inch deep slot, 1-inch long pieces of backer rod shall be pressed down on top of the wires in each foot around the loop, to anchor the wires in the bottom of the slot before applying the loop sealant. Backer rod pieces shall also be placed on top of the loop leads as was done around the loops, to anchor the leads in the bottom of the collector slots that run from the loops to the conduit entry point at the edge of the pavement. Backer rod shall be embedded at least 2 inches below the top of pavement. The backer rod shall be placed into the slot with a blunt object, such as a wooden stir stick. No sharp object, such as a screwdriver, shall be used to press backer rod into slots.

552
553
554
555
556
557
558
559
560
561
562
563
564
565
566
567
568
569
570
571
572
573
574
575
576
577
578
579
580
581
582
583
584
585
586
587
588
589
590
591
592
593
594
595
596
597

(j) Loop sealant shall be applied to slots so that there are no voids, completely filling the slot, and such that the sealant will cure flush with the road surface.

(k) Twisted-pair loop leads shall be twisted five twists per foot from the conduit entry point at the roadside to the pull box, where they will be spliced to the home-run cable. The twisting shall be completed prior to inserting the resulting twisted-pair loop lead into the conduit leading to the pull box.

(l) A twisted pair of loop leads from one loop sensor shall not be twisted with the twisted pair from another loop sensor.

(m) The twisted-pair lead-in wires from the loop sensors shall be spliced (as directed by the Engineer) to new home-run cables at the closest pull box to the loop, using a splice kit. The splice kits shall be used in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications. The splices shall be inspected by the Engineer before acceptance. Splice points of cables must be suspended near the top of the pull box with a j-hook or equivalent.

(n) A service loop of 5 feet of extra slack shall be provided in pull boxes for each loop sensor home-run cable.

(o) Loop sensor home-run cables shall be trimmed after allowing for an extra 12 inches of slack inside the EVC cabinet(s).

(p) HDOT or its representative will make the final connection inside the EVC cabinet(s); however, the Contractor shall label the wires clearly to identify traffic direction, lane number, and sequence of loops sensors in each lane per direction. All labeling at pull boxes and cabinet(s) must be consistent.

(3) Pull Boxes.

(a) New pull boxes shall be furnished and installed as indicated in the Contract Plans. Locations for new pull boxes shall be excavated carefully. For station restorations, existing pull boxes are to remain and shall be reused when possible.

(b) New pull boxes shall be installed so that covers are level with curb or sidewalk grade or 1 inch above surrounding ground.

(4) Foundations.

598 (a) New foundations shall be constructed as indicated in the
599 Contract documents. Foundations within the Clear Zone, as defined
600 by the AASHTO *Roadside Design Guide*, including anchor bolts,
601 shall not extend more than 4 inches above the surrounding ground.
602 Pre-cast foundations, if used, shall also not extend more than 4
603 inches above the surrounding ground if located within the Clear
604 Zone.

605
606 (b) For cast-in-place foundations, forms shall be set true to
607 correct line and grade. Rigid forms shall be securely braced in
608 place. Conduit ends shall be placed in proper position and height
609 and held in place by rigid top template during concrete placement
610 and until concrete sets. Concrete shall be cured not less than 72
611 hours.

612
613 (c) Mixing, placement and curing of concrete for cast-in-place
614 foundations shall be in accordance with Section 601, 'Structural
615 Concrete' and Section 503, 'Concrete Structures' of the Standard
616 Specifications.

617
618 **(5) EVC Cabinet(s).**

619
620 New EVC cabinet(s) shall be mounted on foundation(s) and set at
621 required locations as shown in the Contract Plans or as ordered by
622 the Engineer. Cabinet(s) shall be secured to the foundation(s) with
623 1/2-inch by 4-1/2-inch stainless steel wedge anchors.

624
625 **(6) New Conduits.**

626
627 (a) New conduits shall drain towards pull boxes. Conduits shall
628 not drain towards the EVC cabinet(s).

629
630 (b) Directional changes in conduits, such as bends and changes
631 to clear obstructions, shall be made with curved segments using
632 accepted deflection couplings or with short lengths of straight
633 conduits and couplings. The deflection angle between two adjacent
634 lengths of conduits shall not exceed 6 degrees. The bends shall not
635 have a radius of less than 12 times the nominal size of the conduit.
636 The Contractor may use factory-made ells.

637
638 (c) Rigid PVC conduits shall be cut with a hacksaw. The ends
639 shall be squared and trimmed after cutting to remove rough edges.
640 The connections shall be of the solvent-weld type and be made
641 according to the conduit manufacturer's recommendations and as
642 accepted.
643

644 (d) Conduit ends shall be sealed with plugs at the end of each
645 day of work, whenever problems interrupt the conduit installation
646 work, and whenever conduits are subject to submergence in water.
647

648 (e) New conduits shall be kept clean during construction.
649

650 (f) Conduits under pavement and at utility crossings shall be
651 trenched and concrete encased, per Standard Plan TE-36. Metallic
652 Excavation Warning Tape shall be placed above the conduit per
653 Standard Plan TE-36. Conduits in some unpaved parts of the Right
654 of Way may be installed per Standard Plan TE-35, as indicated on
655 Contract Plans.
656

657 (g) Only hand shovels shall be used in compacting concrete
658 encasements. Concrete shall be cured for at least 72 hours before
659 permitting vehicular traffic to run over the concrete.
660

661 (h) The entire length of a conduit run between pull boxes or
662 between pull boxes and cabinets shall be of one type of material.
663

664 (i) The completed conduits shall be subject to a field test. A
665 bullet-shaped test mandrel about 14 inches long with a diameter
666 0.5 inch less than the inside diameter of the conduits shall be
667 passed through the entire length of each conduit run. The Engineer
668 will consider scouring found on the mandrel deeper than 1/32 inch
669 an indication of burrs and/or obstructions in the conduit run. Normal
670 abrasion between the conduit line and bottom of mandrel is not an
671 indication of burrs and/or obstructions in the conduit run. Any burrs
672 and/or obstructions shall be removed, then the test mandrel shall
673 be passed through again. The process shall be repeated until the
674 Contractor gets a satisfactory result.
675

676 (j) Each conduit run shall be provided with a No.10 gauge
677 flexible, zinc-coated pull wire (or 1/8-inch polyester or polyolefin pull
678 wire) extending through its entire length. An additional 5 feet of pull
679 wire shall be doubled back into the conduit at each end of the run.
680 Conduits and sleeves entering pull boxes shall be fitted with belled
681 ends and shall end flush in the wall with ends ground smooth and
682 plugged temporarily.
683

684 (7) **Existing Conduits.**
685

686 (a) For station restorations, existing conduits are to remain and
687 shall be reused if possible, after removal of existing wiring and any
688 accumulated dirt or debris.
689

690 (b) Each conduit run shall be provided with a No.10 gauge
691 flexible, zinc-coated pull wire (or 1/8-inch polyester or polyolefin pull
692 wire) extending through its entire length. An additional 5 feet of pull
693 wire shall be doubled back into the conduit at each end of the run.
694

695 (8) **New Wiring.**
696

697 (a) Wiring shall conform to the appropriate articles of the NEC
698 and shall be arranged within assemblies and pull boxes neatly.
699 Wiring installed underground must be in conduits—no direct burial.
700 Before the final installation of cables in conduits, a wire brush,
701 swab, and mandrel shall be pulled through each conduit, to ensure
702 that extraneous matter has been removed, and to verify that
703 the conduit system is clean and free from obstructions.
704

705 (b) Cables shall be handled with great care to avoid damage to
706 the conductors or the jacket. Cables shall not be pulled off and
707 laid on the ground before installation. Pulls shall be made in
708 one direction only. Lubricants used shall be as recommended
709 by the cable manufacturer or accepted by the Engineer. Wires or
710 cables shall not be left under tension nor tight against bushings or
711 fittings.
712

713 (c) Damaged ends resulting from the use of pulling grips shall be
714 removed soon after pulling conductor and cable. Cable ends shall be
715 temporarily taped or capped to exclude moisture and shall remain
716 protected until HDOT or its representative makes the final
717 connections inside the EVC cabinet(s). The Contractor shall label
718 the wires clearly to identify traffic direction, lane number, and
719 sequence of loops and piezo sensors in each lane per direction. All
720 labeling at pull boxes and cabinet(s) must be consistent.
721

722 (9) **Equipment Installed in EVC Cabinet**
723

724 (a) EVC equipment to be installed inside of EVC cabinet shall
725 be furnished by HDOT. Contractor shall coordinate with HDOT for
726 procurement of equipment and shall be responsible for installing
727 equipment and all testing required by HDOT ensuring equipment is
728 functioning, installed and connected correctly. Damaged
729 equipment which fails testing shall be replaced at Contractor's
730 expense.
731

732 (D) **Bonding and Grounding.** For station restorations, existing bonding and
733 grounding equipment shall remain and be reused when possible. New
734 stations shall have bonding and grounding constructed as follows:
735

- 736
737
738
739
740
741
742
743
744
745
746
747
748
749
750
751
752
753
754
755
756
757
758
759
760
761
762
763
764
765
766
767
768
769
770
771
772
773
774
775
776
777
778
779
780
781
- (1) Metallic conductor and cable sheaths and conduits shall be secured mechanically and electrically to form a continuous system.
 - (2) The system shall be grounded in accordance with the NEC and as specified herein. No. 8 AWG copper wire or equivalent copper strap of same cross-sectional area shall be provided for bonding and grounding jumpers.
 - (3) Conduits and neutral wires shall be grounded at service points as required in accordance with the NEC, using No. 6 AWG or equal for grounding conductors.
 - (4) Copper-clad steel or pure copper ground rod, 5/8-inch diameter by 8 feet long, shall be installed inside cabinet foundation(s).
 - (5) Grounding rods shall use No. 6 AWG wire to connect to No. 8 AWG ground wire loop and power system neutral.
 - (6) On wood poles, equipment mounted less than 8 feet above grade shall be grounded.
- (E) **Power Service.** New stations shall have necessary new power service facilities coordinated and constructed in accordance with the respective power company's requirements. For station restorations, existing power service equipment shall remain and be reused when possible.
- (F) **Wired Telecommunication Service.** If new EVC(s) will be using utility wired telecommunication service, the necessary new facilities shall be coordinated and constructed in accordance with the respective communications company's requirements. For station restorations, existing wired communication equipment shall remain and be reused when possible.
- (G) **Inspection and Testing.**
- (1) **Before Installation.** The equipment shall be given requisite factory tests and inspected by the contractor upon receipt to determine that the workmanship and materials are free from defects.
 - (2) **After Installation.**
 - (a) Piezo sensors shall be tested after installation. Hard copy and digital format test results shall be furnished for each piezo sensor, showing:
 - 1) Resistance: at least 1 megaohm.

782
783
784
785
786
787
788
789
790
791
792
793
794
795
796
797
798
799
800
801
802
803
804
805
806
807
808
809
810
811
812
813
814
815
816
817
818
819
820
821
822
823
824
825
826
827

2) Capacitance: between 5 and 20 nanofarads.

3) Dissipation Factor: less than 0.04.

(b) Loop sensors shall be tested after installation. Hard copy and digital format test results shall be furnished for each loop sensor, showing:

1) Induced voltage (V).

2) f = Frequency of Loop (kHz).

3) L = Inductance of Loop (μ H).

4) R = Resistance of Loop (ohm).

5) Meg Test = Loop insulation resistance should be greater than 100 megohms.

(c) The Contractor shall provide all testing equipment such as BK 875A or equivalent LCR meter, Fluke 75 or higher/equivalent multimeter, megohmmeter, and scope meter or oscilloscope for the above tests.

(d) Any defects discovered as a result of the sensor tests shall be corrected at no additional cost to the State.

(3) Acceptance of EVC System(s). The EVC System(s) shall not be accepted and payment shall not be made until testing results requirements have been successfully met and the test results have been submitted to the State within 30 calendar days from the completion of sensor installation.

(H) Restoring Pavements and Other Improvements. Existing pavements and other improvements, such as driveways, sidewalks, curbs, and gutters disturbed by excavation shall be restored to their original condition. Replacement material equal to or better in quality than existing materials shall be used. Existing grades, thickness, texture, and color shall be matched whenever applicable.

(I) Warranty. New material and equipment for permanent construction shall be provided. Copies of manufacturer's warranty or warranties guaranteeing equipment free from defects in materials, design, and manufacturing, for not less than 12 months from the date of acceptance shall be furnished. Adjustment or repair of material and equipment under

828 warranty shall be made within 24 hours from time of notification.
829 Temporarily replacement of under-warranty material and equipment
830 requiring factory corrections shall be made within 24 hours from time of
831 notification. Factory-corrected or new material and equipment shall be
832 installed no later than 30 days from time of notification.
833

834 **621.04 Method of Measurement.** The EVC System will be paid for on a lump
835 sum basis. Measurement for payment will not apply.
836

837 **621.05 Basis of Payment.** The Engineer will pay for the accepted EVC System
838 on a lump sum basis. Payment will be full compensation for the work prescribed in this
839 section and the Contract Documents.
840

841 The Engineer will pay for the following pay item when included in the proposal schedule:
842

843 Pay Item	Pay Unit	
845 EVC System		Lump Sum

846

847

END OF SECTION 621”

SECTION 622 – ROADWAY AND SIGN LIGHTING SYSTEM

Make the following amendments to said Section:

(I) Amend Subsection 622.05 Measurement from lines 402 to 403 to read as follows:

“ (A) The Engineer will measure the luminaire assembly, luminaire bracket arms, luminaire poles, luminaire bases, luminaire appurtenances, metering cabinet assembly and appurtenances, pullboxes per each in accordance with the contract documents.

(B) The Engineer will measure streetlight conductors, casing, trench excavation, removal of ductbank and cables per linear foot in accordance with the contract documents.

(C) Hawaiian Electric Company service connection fees for street light service and removal of existing streetlights will be paid on a lump sum basis. Measurement for payment will not apply.

(II) Amend **Subsection 622.05 Payment** from lines 412 to 414 to read as follows:

“Pay Item	Pay Unit
State Street Light Standard, 98W LED, Luminaire, 8' Bracket Arm, Standard Pole, Base and Appurtenances	Each
State Street Light Standard, 98W LED Luminaire, 8' bracket arm, 18' Pole, Base and Appurtenances	Each
State Street Light Standard, 98W LED Luminaire, 8' bracket arm, 17' Pole, Base and Appurtenances	Each
State Street Light Standard, 120W LED, Luminaire, 8' Bracket Arm, Standard Pole, Base and Appurtenances	Each
State Street Light Standard, 120W LED Luminaire, 8' bracket arm, 18' Pole, Base and Appurtenances	Each
State Street Light, 98W LED Luminaire, 8' bracket arm, 25' Pole, Base and Appurtenances	Each
State Street Light Standard, 120W LED Luminaire, 8' bracket arm, Mounted on HECO Wood Pole	Each
Street Light Metering Cabinet, pad, panelboard, meter socket and,	

47	appurtenances	Each
48		
49	GE Light Grid Node	Each
50		
51	Type "B" Highway Lighting Pullboxes	Each
52		
53	Streetlight Conductors #2 RHW	L.F.
54		
55	Streetlight 2"C Pvc Sch 40	L.F.
56		
57	Street Light Trench Excavation	L.F.
58		
59	Street Light Concrete	C.Y.
60		
61	Remove Type "B" Streetlight Pull box	Each
62		
63	Remove Pole Mounted Streetlight, Bracket Arm,	
64	Luminaire, and Appurtenances	Lump Sum
65		
66	Remove Standalone Streetlight Base, 30' Pole, Bracket Arm,	
67	Luminaire, and Appurtenances	Lump Sum
68		
69	Remove Streetlight Ductbank	L.F.
70		
71	Remove Streetlight Cables	L.F.
72		
73	HECo. Service Charge for Street Light Service	Lump Sum
74		
75		
76		
77		

END OF SECTION 622

48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94

The Engineer will pay for the traffic signal assembly installed on street light standards at the contract unit price per each complete in place. The price includes full compensation for submitting the equipment list and drawing; furnishing and installing the traffic signal standard; wiring; bonding and grounding; testing; providing turn-on service; submitting warranty; and furnishing equipment, tools, labor, materials; and other incidentals necessary to complete the work. Conduits and cables up to 10' away from the street light standards are considered incidental to the installation of the traffic signal assembly.

The Engineer will pay for the foundation for controller cabinet and traffic signal standard at the contract unit price per each complete in place. The price includes full compensation for excavating and backfilling; forming; furnishing and placing the reinforcing steel; mixing, placing, and curing the concrete; furnishing and setting the anchor bolts; restoring the pavement; construction of a raised concrete pedestal; and furnishing equipment, tools, materials and other incidentals necessary to complete the work. Conduits and cables up to 10' away from the traffic signal standards are considered incidental to the installation of the traffic signal standard.

The Engineer will pay for the pedestrian and traffic signal assembly at the contract unit price per each complete in place. The price includes full compensation for submitting the equipment list and drawing; assembling the signal heads; wiring; bonding and grounding; painting the signal head mounting; testing; providing turn-on service; submitting warranty; and furnishing equipment, tools, labor, materials and other incidentals necessary to complete the work.

The Engineer will pay for the pedestrian pushbutton with instruction sign at the contract unit price per each complete in place. The price includes full compensation for submitting the equipment list and drawing; furnishing and installing the pedestrian pushbutton with the instruction sign; wiring; bonding and grounding; testing; providing turn-on service; submitting warranty; and furnishing equipment, tools, labor, materials; and other incidentals necessary to complete the work.

The Engineer will pay for the pullbox at the contract unit price per each complete in place. The price includes full compensation for submitting the equipment list and drawing; furnishing and installing the pullbox at the designated locations; saw cutting; excavating and backfilling; restoration of concrete sidewalks, asphalt concrete pavement and landscaping; coating the frames and covers; and furnishing equipment, tools, labor, materials and other incidentals necessary to complete the work.

The Engineer will pay for the loop detector sensing unit at the contract unit price per each complete in place. The price includes full compensation for saw cutting; cleaning and blowing the saw cut areas; furnishing and inserting the loop cable; splicing in the pullbox; filling the saw cut groove with epoxy sealer or hot

95 applied rubberized sealant; and furnishing equipment, tools, labor, materials and
96 other incidentals necessary to complete the work.

97
98 The Engineer will not pay for the interconnect or electrical risers. The
99 work includes furnishing and installing the riser; and furnishing equipment, tools,
100 labor, materials, and other incidentals necessary to complete the work. The
101 Engineer will consider the cost for risers as included in the contract price for the
102 various contract items.

103
104 The Engineer will pay for the emergency vehicle preemption (EVP) optical
105 receiver at the contract unit price per each complete in place. The price includes
106 full compensation for submitting the equipment list and drawing; furnishing and
107 installing the EVP; wiring; bonding and grounding; testing; providing turn-on
108 service; submitting warranty; and furnishing equipment, tools, labor, materials;
109 and other incidentals necessary to complete the work.

110
111 The Engineer will pay for the camera cable at the contract unit price per
112 linear foot complete in place. The price includes full compensation for furnishing
113 and installing the preemption detector cable from the detector to the cabinet; and
114 furnishing equipment, tools, labor, materials and other incidentals necessary to
115 complete the work.

116
117 The Engineer will pay for the traffic signal ductlines at the contract unit
118 price per linear foot complete in place. The price includes full compensation for
119 saw cutting; trenching; excavating and backfilling, including asphalt concrete
120 pavement, aggregate base course and aggregate subbase course for trench
121 repair; concrete curb and/or gutter, concrete sidewalk repair and striping
122 restoration; furnishing, installing, bonding, and grounding the conduits and
123 interconnect subducts; and furnishing equipment, tools, labor, materials and
124 other incidentals necessary to complete the work.

125
126 The Engineer will pay for the traffic signal interconnect subduct at the
127 contract unit price per linear foot complete in place. The price includes full
128 compensation for furnishing and installing; and furnishing equipment, tools, labor,
129 materials and other incidentals necessary to complete the work.

130
131 The Engineer will pay for the traffic signal cables at the contract unit price
132 per linear foot complete in place. The price includes full compensation for
133 furnishing, installing, splicing, and taping the cable; furnishing and installing
134 interconnect fabric subducts; making the connections; providing turn-on service;
135 and furnishing equipment, tools, labor, materials and other incidentals necessary
136 to complete the work.

137
138 The Engineer will pay for the service and metering equipment assembly at
139 the contract unit price per each complete in place. The price includes full
140 compensation for furnishing and installing the meter/main safety socket box,
141 pullbox, support structure, ground rod, conduit, conductors; and furnishing

142 equipment, tools, labor, materials and other incidentals necessary to complete
143 the work.

144

145 The Engineer will pay for Hawaiian Electric Company service connection
146 fees and transformer installation on a force account basis according to
147 Subsection 109.06 – Force Account Provisions and Compensation. An estimate
148 amount for the force account is allocated in the proposal schedule under
149 Hawaiian Electric Company Service Connection Fees and Transformer
150 Installation Fees. The actual amount to be paid will be the sum shown on the
151 accepted force account records whether this sum be more or less than the
152 estimated amount allocated in the proposal schedule.

153

154 The Engineer will pay for traffic signal pullboxes at the contract unit price
155 per each complete in place. The price includes full compensation for furnishing
156 and installing the pullbox, and furnishing equipment, tools, labor, materials and
157 other incidentals necessary to complete the work.

158

159 The Engineer will pay for traffic signal pullbox tie-in at the contract unit
160 price per each complete in place. The price includes full compensation for
161 furnishing and installing the pullbox tie-in, and furnishing equipment, tools, labor,
162 materials and other incidentals necessary to complete the work.

163

164 The Engineer will pay for the secondary electrical ductline at the contract
165 price per linear foot complete in place. The price includes full compensation for
166 saw cutting, excavating and backfilling; furnishing, installing, grounding,
167 terminating conductors; and furnishing equipment, tools, labor, materials and
168 other incidentals necessary to complete the work.

169

170 The Engineer will consider full compensation for additional materials and
171 labor not shown in the contract that are necessary to complete the installation of
172 the various systems incidental to the various contract items. The Engineer will
173 not allow additional compensation.

174

175 The Engineer will pay for the traffic signal assembly at the contract unit
176 price per each complete in place. The price includes full compensation for
177 submitting the equipment list and drawing; furnishing and installing the signal
178 assembly; wiring; bonding and grounding; testing; providing turn-on service;
179 submitting warranty; and furnishing equipment, tools, labor, materials; and other
180 incidentals necessary to complete the work. Wiring from the traffic signal mast
181 arm or pole to the handhole are considered incidental to the traffic signal
182 assembly.

183

184 The Engineer will pay for the Closed-Circuit Television Camera (CCTV) at
185 the contract unit price per each complete in place. The price includes full
186 compensation for submitting the equipment list and drawing; furnishing and
187 installing the CCTV camera; wiring; bonding and grounding; testing; providing

188 turn-on service; submitting warranty; and furnishing equipment, tools, labor,
189 materials; and other incidentals necessary to complete the work.

190
191 The Engineer will pay for the penetration of existing pullbox at the contract
192 unit price per each complete in place. The price includes full compensation for
193 furnishing and installing conduits and ends incidental to the penetration; wiring;
194 bonding and grounding; testing; finishing; submitting warranty; and furnishing
195 equipment, tools, labor, materials; and other incidentals necessary to complete
196 the work.

197
198 The Engineer will pay for saw cutting, excavation, backfill and restoration
199 of the traffic signal ductlines at the contract unit price complete in place. The
200 price includes full compensation for saw cutting; trenching; excavating and
201 backfilling, including asphalt concrete pavement, aggregate base course and
202 aggregate subbase course for trench repair; concrete curb and/or gutter and
203 concrete sidewalk repair; and furnishing equipment, tools, labor, materials and
204 other incidentals necessary to complete the work.

205
206 The Engineer will pay for the following pay items when included in the
207 proposal schedule:

208		
209	Pay Item	Pay Unit
210	Traffic Signal Cabinet and Foundation	Each
211		
212	Type I (10') Traffic Signal Standard _____ with conduit & Cabling	Each
213		
214	Type II Traffic Signal Standard _____ with conduit & Cabling	Each
215		
216	Street Light Traffic Signal Standard	Each"
217		
218	Traffic Signal Assembly _____ with Cabling	Each
219		
220	Traffic Signal Assembly _____ Programmed Visibility	Each
221		
222	Pedestrian Pushbutton with Instruction Sign with Cabling	Each
223		
224	Pedestrian Signal Assembly with Cabling	Each
225		
226	Type "A" Pullbox	Each
227		
228	Type "B" Pullbox	Each
229		
230	Type "C" Pullbox	Each
231		
232	Pullbox Tie-in	Each
233		
234	Loop Detector Sensing Unit (6 Ft. x 6 Ft.) with Cabling	Each

235		
236	EVP Optical Receiver	Each
237		
238	EVP Optical Receiver Cabling	Linear Foot
239		
240	Traffic Signal Ductline _____	Linear Foot
241		
242	Type 1 Cable – 26C#14	Linear Foot
243		
244	Type 2 Cable – 2C#14	Linear Foot
245		
246	Type 6 Cable – Electrical Service Cable	Linear Foot
247		
248	Demolish Traffic Signal Conduits, Cables, and Equipment	Lump Sum
249		
250	Service and Metering Equipment Assembly	Each
251		
252	HECo. Service Charge for Traffic Signal Service	Lump Sum”
253		
254		
255		
256	END OF SECTION 623	

48	_____ - Inch Ductile Iron Pipe, Class 53	Linear Foot
49		
50	_____ - Inch Bevel Geared Gate Valve	Each
51		
52	_____ - Inch Gate Valve	Each
53		
54	_____ - Inch ARV	Each
55		
56	_____ - Inch Offset ARV	Each
57		
58	Relocate Water Service Lateral at Station 144+92.6	Lump Sum
59		
60	Fire Hydrant	Each
61		
62	Cathodic Protection	Lump Sum
63		
64	Temporary Waterline By-Pass _____	Lump Sum"
65		
66		
67		
68		
69	END OF SECTION 624	

1 **SECTION 626 – MANHOLES AND VALVE BOXES FOR WATER AND SEWER**
2 **SYSTEMS**

3
4 Make the following amendment to said Section:

5
6 **(I) Amend 626.04 - Measurement** by replacing lines 172 to 173 to read:

7
8 **“626.04 Measurement.**

9
10 **(A)** The Engineer will measure manholes and valve boxes, inclusive of
11 frames and covers per each for water and sewer systems.

12
13 **(B)** Adjusting manhole frame and covers, and adjusting water valve
14 boxes will be paid on a lump sum basis. Measurement for
15 payment will not apply.”

16
17 **(II) Amend 626.05 – Payment** by revising lines 174 to 192 to read as follows:

18
19 **“626.05 Payment.** The Engineer will pay for the accepted pay items listed
20 below at the contract price bid per unit specified in the proposal. Payment will be
21 full compensation for work prescribed in this section and in contract documents.

22
23 The Engineer will pay for each of the following pay items when included in
24 proposal schedule:

25

26 Pay Item	27 Pay Unit
28 ____ Manhole, ____ feet to ____ feet	29 Each
30 Adjusting _____ Manhole Frame and Cover	31 Lump Sum
32 (_____) Standard Valve Box	33 Each
34 Adjusting Water Valve Box	35 Lump Sum

36 The Engineer will pay for excavation and backfill in accordance with and
37 under Section 204 -- Excavation and Backfill for Miscellaneous Facilities.”

38
39
40
41 **END OF SECTION 626**

1 Make the following section part of the Standard Specifications:
2

3 **"SECTION 627 – TRAFFIC MONITORING AND SIGNAL CONTROL SYSTEM**
4

5 **627.01 Description.** This section shall consist of all work and materials necessary to
6 complete a fully operational CCTV and signal control system for traffic control and
7 surveillance of various sites shown on the plans. The work shall involve coordinating all
8 equipment and labor necessary to incorporate and integrate the new upgraded digital
9 CCTV sites into Honolulu's existing Pelco CCTV master system, using Internet Protocol
10 (IP) based communications, located at the Joint Traffic Management Center (JTMC) at
11 710 South King Street. The expanded CCTV and signal control system will assist
12 operators at the JTMC to monitor traffic conditions, mitigate traffic congestion, and set
13 the appropriate traffic plans which best suits and improves the traffic progression along
14 Honolulu's busiest arterials.
15

16 The CCTV and signal control system shall consist of remotely controlled color cameras,
17 remote video switching, IP communications system, and a fiber optic link. From camera
18 sites to a central gigabit switch, video signals and control data will be transmitted over
19 two single-mode fibers through a 100/1000/10000base T/FX IP switch. At several of the
20 central gigabit switch's 1000base FX bi-directional channels, data and video from all of
21 the cameras and traffic signals on site Ethernet switch will be connected. The central
22 gigabit switch shall be connected to the JTMC's gigabit switch through a 10000Base FX
23 channel using two single mode fiber optic cables. From the JTMC's gigabit switch, IP
24 video decoders, one for each camera site, shall be used to connect to the existing Pelco
25 switcher.
26

27 All camera equipment shall be identical and/or compatible with the existing Honolulu
28 system in terms of hardware and software.
29

30 There shall be a locally based supplier of the CCTV system and fiberoptic hardware
31 who shall have at least 3 (three) years experience from the project advertisement in
32 installing and setting up of CCTV and fiberoptic systems specifically for traffic-highway
33 applications. The CCTV firm shall be responsible for testing all fiberoptic hardware and
34 cables to provide a documented optical budget loss analysis for each link to and from a
35 hub station. The CCTV supplier will be responsible for all hookup, assignments,
36 dedication, testing, matching, and splicing of the fiberoptic cables. All fiberoptic splice
37 points shall have pigtails on all fiberoptic members which attach to fiberoptic hardware
38 and components with SC-connectors. All unused fiber optic strands shall be jumpered
39 color for color using a fiberoptic patch panel. The CCTV supplier shall be fully
40 responsible for all splices, budget loss, attenuators, appropriate fiber hardware,
41 accessories, and pigtail connections for a fully operational system. All other hardware,
42 equipment, and labor necessary shall be considered incidental.
43

44 The Fiberoptic Cable Contractor shall be a locally based installer who shall have at least
45 3 (three) years experience from the project advertisement in installing fiberoptic cables
46 specifically for outdoor overhead joint-pole and underground applications. The firm

47 shall also track and document the installation data and tension measurements when
48 installing the fiberoptic cables. Any tension measurements which exceeds the
49 manufacturer's recommendations will be considered means for the cable rejection. The
50 Fiberoptic Contractor shall be fully responsible for the quality and integrity of the
51 installed cable and the operability of the final fiberoptic cable product.

52
53 **627.02 Video, Signal Control and Fiberoptic Hardware.** For bidding purposes, the
54 qualified, as stated in Section 627.01 Description, CCTV Supplier shall furnish and
55 install the following items and quantity. All other equipment necessary to complete a
56 fully operational system will be considered incidental.

57
58 **Interconnected Signals Site Equipment.** In order to communicate with the JTMC
59 over an Ethernet network, a 170E controller will need an Ethernet module. The
60 Ethernet module shall enable any 170E controller to communicate over an Ethernet
61 network. The Ethernet module shall be designed to plug into the modem slot of the
62 170E controller. Communication to the controller is through the EIA-232 serial port lines
63 while the RJ-45 connector supports the Ethernet interface. The module shall be auto
64 sensing for 100/1000Base-T. The Ethernet module shall process the Ethernet protocol
65 packet such that the 170E Signal controller only sees the intended message.

66
67 The Contractor shall at each of the sites shall furnish and install, but not limited to, the
68 following items:

69
70 332A Fiberoptic cabinet with outdoor Category 6 cable between the 170E Ethernet
71 Module and Ethernet Switch

72
73 Ethernet Module meeting the following requirements:

- 74 a. The module shall have the Model 400 modem footprint
- 75 b. EIA-232 Interface to the 170 Controller
- 76 c. RJ45 Ethernet Interface
- 77 d. Direct IP addressing
- 78 e. Auto-Sensing 100Base-T or 1000Base-T
- 79 f. Operating temperature shall be 37°C to +74°C
- 80 g. Data Rates 1200 to 38.4 kbps
- 81 h. Characters 7 or 8 data bits
- 82 i. Parity: odd, even, or none. Stop: bits 1 or 2
- 83 j. Operate between +12 volts @ 125 mA Max and -12 volts @ 25 mA Max
- 84 k. On-board LED Indicators, Red Tx and Rx LEDs
- 85 l. Supports Protocols TCP/IP, ARP, UDP, ICMP, Telnet, TFTP, DHCP, HTTP,
86 SNMP protocols
- 87 m. Connector RJ-45
- 88 n. A minimum of 2 Year warranty

89
90 **(A) Hardened Ethernet Switch.**

91 The network managed Layer 2, with light Layer 3 managed switch is a
92 hardened DIN-rail mounted managed PoE++ Ethernet switch equipped with

93 12 gigabit PoE++ ports along with 360W power and IEEE 802.3bt protocol
94 support and 4 dual rate 1G/10G SFP ports. The managed switch shall be
95 optically and electrically compatible with any IEEE 802.3 compliant Ethernet
96 devices. The managed Ethernet switch will provide transmission of eight
97 100/1000 BASE-TX and four 1/10G FX ports. The managed Ethernet
98 switches shall be environmentally hardened units, designed for roadside
99 operating environments, and are available for use with either conventional
100 CAT 6 copper or optical transmission media. The twelve electrical ports
101 support the 10/100/1000 Mbps Ethernet IEEE 802.3 protocol, auto-
102 negotiating and auto-MDI/MDIX, four 1/10G FX ports are configurable for
103 copper or fiber media for use with multimode or single mode optical fiber,
104 selected by optional SFP modules, plug-and-play design, and no electrical or
105 optical adjustments required. LED indicators for monitoring the operating
106 status of the managed switch and network and is either DIN-rail or wall
107 mountable.

108

109 The hardened managed Ethernet switch shall meet the following minimum
110 requirements:

111

- 112 a. Layer 2 with light Layer 3 managed switch
- 113 b. Layer 3 Features at a minimum includes IP Packet Routing (64 hardware
114 routes, Static routing, RIP v1/v2, OSPF v2) and Routing Redundancy
- 115 c. Transmission of 4 channels of 1/10G over one or two single-mode fibers
116 respectively.
- 117 d. Transmission of 12 channels of 10/100/1000 Mbps over Cat-6 cable.
- 118 e. 2 – Hardened Single (LC), 1 Gigabit, 40 Km SFP modules.
- 119 f. 1 – Hardened Duplex (LC), 1 Gigabit, 40 Km SFP modules.
- 120 g. 1 – Hardened Duplex (LC), 10 Gigabit, 40 Km SFP modules (1310 nm).
- 121 h. Up to 90W per PoE port, with a power budget of 360 Watts. Compliance
122 to IEEE 802.3bt type 4.
- 123 i. Shall support the Ethernet data IEEE 802.3 protocol using Auto-
124 negotiating for port speed and duplex.
- 125 j. Provide power, link speed, and fiber port status indicating LED's for
126 monitoring system operation.
- 127 k. Provide 2 - alarm contact closure.
- 128 l. Power Supply: 480W / 10A DIN Rail, 48VDC Industrial Power Supply,
129 similar to NDR-480-48 or equal
- 130 m. Serial connection with cable for local management of the device.
- 131 n. Shall operate in an environment with relative humidity of 5% to 95% (non-
132 condensing).
- 133 o. Shall operate in an environment with ambient temperature range of -40° C
134 to +75° C without the assistance of fan-forced cooling.
- 135 p. Shall be DIN rail mountable.
- 136 q. Lifetime manufactures warranty.

137

138

139 **(B) Dual Camera Site Equipment.** The Contractor shall at each of the sites where
140 shown on the plans, furnish and install, but not limited to, the following items:
141
142 2 Each, Color Camera Package, as described in section 627.03 CCTV Traffic Camera
143 Assembly.
144
145 2 Each, Side or top mounted pole bracket for camera.
146
147 2 Each, Video/Data IP Decoder meeting the following requirements:
148
149 a. H264 encoding
150 b. Adjustable IP Packet size streams.
151 c. Flash memory.
152 d. Remote user reset via all modes of interface.
153 e. NTSC video format at 30 frames per second capability
154 f. Max pixel resolution of 720x480
155 g. Less than 200 msec video latency
156 h. 75-ohm, unbal BNC (f) connectors
157 i. RJ-45 Ethernet connectors, 10/100BaseT-TX
158 j. Auto sensing, half/full duplex
159 k. One static IP address for the Encoder, Classes A, B, or C configurable by the
160 user.
161 l. Gateway needs to be user configurable or can be left blank.
162 m. RS232/RS422/RS485 asynchronous port
163 • Standard data rates from 300 bps to 115,200 bps, 8N1
164 • One front panel Craft port set permanently for 9600 bps, 8N1
165 • Stop bits 1 and 2
166 • Databits 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 or 12
167 • None, even or odd, space or mark parity
168 • IP socket to Encoder serial port
169 • Encoder serial port to Decoder serial port data stream
170 • Local and remote Loopback Test Capability
171 n. -40 degrees C to +75 degrees C operating temperature
172
173 1 Ea., Hardened Managed Ethernet Switch as described in section 627.02(A).
174
175 1 Each, Rack Mounted 72 Splice Capacity SC Compatible Patch Panel, ADC FDM-
176 SB36000 with all necessary splice fittings and pigtails.
177
178 Incidentals: Furnish and install all necessary cables and hardware for power, control
179 data, and video. Local CCTV Power requires POE++CAT6, shielded outdoor cable
180 Where No. 4, 6, or 8 HE feeder cables and service meters are necessary, the said items
181 will not be paid for as a separate unit and will be considered incidental. All other
182 equipment and labor necessary to complete a fully operational system will be the
183 Contractor's responsibility and considered incidental to the cost of the camera site bid.
184

185
186
187
188
189
190
191
192
193
194
195
196
197
198
199
200
201
202
203
204
205
206
207
208
209
210
211
212
213
214
215
216
217
218
219
220
221
222
223
224
225
226
227
228
229
230

(C) Quad Camera Site Equipment. The Contractor shall at each of the sites where shown on the plans, furnish and install, but not limited to, the following items:

4 Each, Color Camera Package, as described in section 627.03.

4 Each, Side or top mounted pole bracket for camera.

4 Each, Video/Data IP Decoder meeting the following requirements:

- a. H264 encoding
- b. Adjustable IP Packet size streams.
- c. Flash memory.
- d. Remote user reset via all modes of interface.
- e. NTSC video format at 30 frames per second capability
- f. Max pixel resolution of 720x480
- g. Less than 200 msec video latency
- h. 75-ohm, unbal BNC (f) connectors
- i. RJ-45 Ethernet connectors, 10/100BaseT-TX
- j. Auto sensing, half/full duplex
- k. One static IP address for the Encoder, Classes A, B, or C configurable by the user.
- l. Gateway needs to be user configurable or can be left blank.
- m. RS232/RS422/RS485 asynchronous port
 - Standard data rates from 300 bps to 115,200 bps, 8N1
 - One front panel Craft port set permanently for 9600 bps, 8N1
 - Stop bits 1 and 2
 - Databits 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 or 12
 - None, even or odd, space or mark parity
 - IP socket to Encoder serial port
 - Encoder serial port to Decoder serial port data stream
 - Local and remote Loopback Test Capability
- n. -40 degrees C to +75 degrees C operating temperature

1 Ea., Hardened Managed Ethernet Switch as described in section 627.02(A) Hardened Ethernet Switch.

1 Each, Rack Mounted 72 Splice Capacity SC Compatible Patch Panel, ADC FDM-SB36000 with all necessary splice fittings and pigtails.

Incidentals: Furnish and install all necessary cables and hardware for power, control data, and video. Local CCTV Power requires POE++CAT6, shielded outdoor cable Where No. 4, 6, or 8 HE feeder cables and service meters are necessary, the said items will not be paid for as a separate unit and will be considered incidental. All other equipment and labor necessary to complete a fully operational system will be the Contractor's responsibility and considered incidental to the cost of the camera site bid.

231
232
233
234
235
236
237
238
239
240
241
242
243
244
245
246
247
248
249
250
251
252
253
254
255
256
257
258
259
260
261
262
263
264
265
266
267
268
269
270
271
272
273
274
275
276

(D) 1/10 Gigabit Layer 3 Switch Site Equipment. The Central Gigabit Layer 3 Switch Site Equipment includes the gigabit switch in the field and the Joint Traffic Management Center (JTMC). The Central Gigabit Switch Site Equipment will provide a high bandwidth connection between the Central Gigabit Switch Site and the JTMC. The gigabit switch in the field will forward any number of IP packets consisting of MPEG-4 compressed video, camera data and signal control data between the JTMC's gigabit switch and the camera and signal on-site switches. At the JTMC's gigabit switch, IP video and data decoders shall be integrated to the existing switcher inputs and outputs. All necessary combiners, splitters, power supplies, racks, cables, expansion cards, and other associated hardware needed to complete a fully operational system shall be furnished and installed by the Contractor and considered included in the cost of the other items in the bid.

The Contractor shall remove existing items, furnish, install, and integrate, but not limited to, the following items at the hub locations where shown on the plans and at the JTMC as designated:

1 Each, Hardened Gigabit Managed Ethernet Layer 3 Switch meeting the following requirements:

- a. Shall support the transmission of a minimum of 4 channels of 1/10 GB over two single-mode fibers.
- b. Shall support the transmission of 24 channels of 10/100/1000 Mbps over Cat-6 cable.
- c. Shall support the Ethernet data IEEE 802.3 protocol using Auto-negotiating and Auto-MDI/MDI-X features.
- d. Features 24 fixed 10/100 Base-T electrical ports and 8 100 Base-FX optical ports.
- e. Features 4 1/10 GB Base-FX optical ports.
- f. Shall require no in-field electrical or optical adjustments or in-line attenuators to ease installation.
- g. Shall provide power, link speed, and fiber port status indicating LED's for monitoring proper system operation.
- h. Provides a contact closure for an over temperature alarm.
- i. Shall provide automatic re-settable solid-state current limiters and independent voltage regulators on each module to reduce the chance of a single point failure of the system.
- j. Shall have redundant power supply connections to minimize single point failure.
- k. Shall provide a serial connection for local management of the device.
- l. Shall operate in an environment with relative humidity of 0% to 95% (non-condensing).
- m. Shall operate in an environment with an ambient temperature range of -0° C to $+50^{\circ}$ C without the assistance of fan-forced cooling.
- n. Shall be rack mountable.

277 o. Shall have a minimum 2 year warranty.
278

279 Incidentals: All other equipment and labor necessary to complete a fully operational
280 system will be the Contractor's responsibility and considered incidental to the cost of the
281 bid.
282

283 **627.03 CCTV TRAFFIC CAMERA ASSEMBLY.** The camera assemblies are for
284 the replacement and maintenance of the existing traffic cameras used for traffic
285 monitoring and traffic signal operations at the Traffic Management Center. It shall
286 be an integrated camera unit consisting of a receiver, pan & tilt, housing, and cables
287 built as a single assembly having 360 degree of continuous pan rotation. The
288 camera shall have full HD 1080p 30 image resolution with integral 30x optical zoom
289 lens. The positioning device shall include true day-night with variable speed pan and
290 tilt technology with a minimum sensitivity of 0.0 lux @30 IRE. The camera shall
291 provide up to 5 independent output video streams configurable for H.264 and
292 MJPEG and analog video output, electronic image stabilization, and wide dynamic
293 range. Camera assembly shall be furnished with components assembled,
294 complete, and a ready-to-install system. Camera system shall meet FHWA's Buy
295 America requirement.
296

297 **(A) CAMERA IMAGING**
298

- 299 a. Image Sensor: Progressive Scan CMOS
300 b. Image Size: Diagonal 6mm
301 c. Image Resolution: 1920 horizontal x 1080 vertical pixels
302 d. Picture Elements (total) 1920 (H) x 1440 (V)
303 e. Sensitivity: Scene Illumination; F1.4 @ 50% Video
304 i. 0.4 Lux (0.04 fc) @ 1/30 shutter, color mode
305 ii. 0.0025 Lux (0.00025 fc) @ 1/2 shutter, mono mode
306 f. Day/Night Operation: Adjustable (Auto, Color and Mono Modes)
307 g. Optical Zoom Range: 30x, minimum
308 h. Digital Zoom: 1x to 12x in 1x increments. The camera system shall
309 support digital zoom limit setting
310 i. Auto Focus: Selectable Auto/Manual; Minimum Scene Illumination
311 for Reliable Auto Focus shall be no more than 50% video output.
312 j. Auto Iris; Selectable auto/manual; Iris shall automatically adjust to
313 compensate for changes in scene illumination to maintain constant
314 video level output.
315 k. Electronic Image Stabilization: Shall support On/Off mode
316 l. Backlight Compensation: Shall support On/Off mode
317 m. White Balance: Shall support Auto/Manual mode
318 n. IR Correction: Shall support On/Off mode
319 o. Sharpness: Shall provide user control of increases or decreases in
320 image sharpness through 4 user selectable settings of soft, normal,
321 sharp and sharpest
322

323 **(B) H.264/MJPEG ENCODING ENGINE**

- 324
- 325 i. The video encoding shall allow the following possible video stream
- 326 configurations:
- 327 i. H.264 Streams: (1) 1920x1080 @ 30fps, (1) 1280x720 @
- 328 30 fps,
- 329 720x480 @ 15 fps.
- 330 i. MJPEG Streams: 1920x1080 @ 10 fps, 1280x720 @ 20 fps
- 331 ii. Analog Video Output: (1).
- 332 ii. Each video encoder channel shall provide the following
- 333 configurable properties;
- 334 i. Codec.
- 335 i. Video frame shall be adjustable from 30 fps to 1 fps in
- 336 increments
- 337 of 1 fps.
- 338 ii. Bite Rate control
- 339 c. Video Stream Protocols; the camera system shall support the
- 340 following protocols:
- 341 i. RTSP/RTP; The RTSP communication shall occur over a
- 342 TCP socket. RTP video packets shall be sent over UDP.
- 343 ii. RTSP Interleaved; RTSP commands and the RTP video
- 344 packets shall be transmitted over a single TCP
- 345 connection.
- 346 iii. HTTP tunneling; this mode shall use two separate TCP
- 347 connections for sending and the other for received data
- 348 from the client over port 80.
- 349 iv. RTP multicast; this mode shall send RTP video packets
- 350 to the user assigned multicast destination. This mode
- 351 shall be required to be enabled or disabled.
- 352 d. Network Protocol Layers: TCP, UDP, IPv4, IGMP, ICMP, DNS,
- 353 DHCP, RTP, RTSP, NTP, HTTP, HTTPS, ARP, and ONVIF
- 354 Profile S as a minimum.
- 355

356 (C) PAN AND TILT DRIVE UNIT SPECIFICATIONS

357

- 358 1. Pan Movement; 360 degrees continuous rotation.
- 359 2. Pan Speed; Variable from 0.05 to 45 degrees/second .
- 360 3. Pan Repeatability; +/- 0.05 degree precision.
- 361 4. Pan Preset Speed; 180 degree movement 2.5 < Seconds.
- 362 5. Tilt Movement; Minimum of +90 to -90 degrees.
- 363 6. Tilt Speed; Variable from 0.05 to 45 degrees/second.
- 364 7. Tilt Repeatability; +/- 0.05 degree precision.
- 365 8. Tilt Preset Speed; 180 degree movement < 2.5 Seconds.
- 366 9. Proportional Zoom Control; Positioning control shall allow
- 367 variable pan/tilt. speeds based on zoom position.
- 368 10. Home Position: Shall be a user defined point.

369 11. The Inter Process Communication System (IPCS) shall not have
370 any exposed wiring from the positioning drive to the camera
371 head enclosure.
372

373 **(D) Electrical**

374
375 Operating Voltage; The camera system shall provide flexible power
376 input as required by the installation to include:

- 377 i. Power over Ethernet, LTPoE++.
- 378 ii. Power injector

379
380 **(E) Certifications/Ratings**

- 381 a. FCC Class A.
- 382 b. International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) / European
- 383 Conformity (CE) cover product emission and immunity
- 384 requirements (CISPR) 22 24.
- 385 c. Restriction of Certain Hazardous Substances (RoHs)

386
387
388 **(F) Enclosure**

- 389 a. Aluminum
- 390 b. Dust-tight
- 391 c. Waterproof & Pressurized

392
393
394 **(G) Controls**

395
396 Shall be controllable or interoperable by a Pelco analog switcher and
397 control System using Pelco P protocol
398 IP protocol shall be controllable by either Pelco P or Onvif protocol
399

400 **(H) Adapter Plate**

401
402 A Stainless Steel, 1/4" minimum, adapter plate shall be provided to
403 integrate the supplied camera mounting to the existing mounting.
404

405 **(I) Warranty**

406
407 Manufacturer's warranty period shall be three (3) years minimum.
408

409 **(J) Mount**

- 410 a. Outdoor type
- 411 b. Aluminum or stainless steel components
- 412 c. Mount cantilever style on pole shafts using straps, or on horizontal mast
- 413 arm shaft
- 414 d. Constructed of marine grade stainless steel

- 415 e. Has cable feed-through
- 416 f. Supports up to 100 lbs
- 417 g. Painted White
- 418 h. Wall to pole mount adapter, as required
- 419 i. Provide ability to level and adjust camera to plumb

420

421 **(K) CCTV Cabinet.** 1 Each, per single camera and dual camera site.

422 All cabinet shall be furnished assembled and configured with the components
423 stated below:

424

425 Cabinet shall be a Traffic Signal 332A anodized aluminum cabinet with a 19"
426 rack, 50 amp circuit breaker, surge-protected, and thermo-control fan.

427

428 Each Model 332A Cabinet shall meet the following additional requirements:

- 429 a. Provide Best Lock (C&C of Honolulu keyed) Security Tumbler Door
430 locks of solid brass rim and include 4 keys.
- 431 b. A rack mounted 6 outlet surge protector power strip
- 432 c. A 19 inch pull out shelf
- 433 d. Remote data port with monitor and control, Stand Alone, all connectors
434 and cables included
- 435 e. Rack Mounted 48 fiber optic Splice Capacity Tray
- 436 f. Rack Mounted 72 fiber optic SC jumper connector

437

438 Surge Protection: Contractor shall install a 120V AC, 3-wire, 20 Amp inline
439 surge protection device. The surge protection device will have an operating
440 temperature of -40 to 85 degree C, maximum surge current of 30,000 amps
441 and surge voltage of 10,000 volts, 138 Volts for clamping voltage, power
442 indicator, open circuit for fail safe operation, and protection shall be between
443 line to neutral, line to ground, ground to neutral.

444 Furnish and install power cables from existing traffic signal meter or new Hawaiian
445 Electric service point.

446

447 **(L) Cabinet Foundation.** 1 Each, per CCTV cabinet. Construction per details on
448 drawings.

449

450 **627.04 Measurement.** The Engineer will measure the various components of the
451 system per unit when contracted on a unit price basis.

452

453 The Engineer will measure camera site equipment, Gigabit switch site equipment, splice
454 cabinets, Type "D" cabinet base, and guy and anchor; per each, complete in place. The
455 conduits for the Type 'D' traffic signal cabinet base will not be measured but considered
456 part of the concrete base each-unit.

457

458 **627.05 Payment.** The Engineer will pay for the accepted quantities of the various
459 components of the system at the contract unit price, complete in place.

460

461 The Engineer will pay for accepted quantities of camera site equipment, hub site
462 equipment, splice cabinets, Type "D" concrete base, poles, cables, conduits, and risers
463 at the contract unit price per each completed in place. The price shall include furnishing
464 and installing the items, and all tools, labor, equipment, and incidentals necessary to
465 complete the work. The conduits for the Type "D" will not be paid for but considered
466 included in the base unit price.

467
468 The Engineer will pay for each of the following pay items when included in the proposal
469 schedule:

470	Pay Item	Pay Unit
471		
472		
473	CCTV Controller, CCTV	Each
474		
475	CCTV Type "C" Pullbox	Each
476		
477	CCTV Ductline _____ , Concrete Encased	Linear Foot
478		
479	Dual Camera Site Equipment	Each
480		
481	Quad Camera Site Equipment	Each
482		
483	CCTV Camera Cable	Linear Foot
484		
485	Removal _____	Lump Sum
486		
487	Broadband Type "B" Pullbox	Each
488		
489	Broadband Ductline _____, Concrete Encased	Linear Foot"
490		
491		
492		
493		

END OF SECTION 627

1 Make the following Section a part of the Standard Specifications:
2

3 **SECTION 636 – E-CONSTRUCTION**
4
5

6 **636.01 Description.** This section specifies requirements for performing the Project in
7 a “paperless” manner, using electronic tools for all submittals, communications, quantity
8 tracking, testing, and sampling, scheduling, quality control, and performance monitoring.
9

10 **636.02 General Requirements.** The Contractor shall implement the use of the E-
11 Construction platform, as provided by the HDOT and directed by the Engineer, for use
12 throughout the project. Paper-based or hard copy submittals will not be accepted.
13

14 This Special Provision shall take precedence over all other Specification sections
15 with respect to providing and receiving paper copy communications, submittals, and any
16 project records. Where conflicts exist, and a decision between a hard-copy item and a
17 corresponding electronic version is needed, the electronic version shall be selected,
18 unless otherwise directed by the Engineer.
19

20 **636.03 Construction**
21

22 **(A) Plans and Specifications.** Project drawings will not be provided to the
23 Contractor in hard copy format. An electronic version will be provided in the E-
24 Construction platform for use during the project.
25

26 The Contractor shall note all changes to the work, including all
27 subcontractor’s work, in electronic format using the E-Construction platform Red
28 annotations shall be used to note changes. Blue annotations shall be used for any
29 additional notes that will be helpful for the State in interpreting the field posted
30 drawings. Other drafting standards may be implemented by the Engineer and shall
31 be adhered to by the Contractor. Changes shall be input by the Contractor and
32 reviewed by the Engineer monthly. The Contractor shall make any changes that
33 the Engineer requires.
34

35 **(B) Submittals.** The Contractor shall provide all required submittals, as listed
36 within the contract documents, via the E-Construction platform.—All review,
37 approval, and resubmittal regarding submittals shall also be documented within
38 the E-Construction platform
39

40 **(C) Correspondence.** Electronic mail (email) shall be the preferred method of
41 electronic communication. All communications that affect project scope, schedule,
42 cost, or quality, including changes and requests for information, shall be submitted
43 as directed by the Engineer.
44

45 **(D) Prosecution and Progress.** The Contractor shall provide all
46 administrative, management, and project support documents required by various
47 specification sections, using the E-Construction platform. These elements include,
48 but are not limited to:

- 49 (1) Preconstruction Submittals (Section 108.03)
- 50 (2) Correspondence regarding Contract Time and Delays (Section
51 108.05)
- 52 (3) Progress Schedules (Section 108.06)
- 53 (4) Weekly Meeting preparatory materials (Section 108.07)
- 54 (5) Samples, certifications, material data, installation instructions, and
55 shop drawings (Sections 105 and 106)
- 56 (6) Field-posted Drawings (Section 648)
- 57 (7) Pre-Final Inspection submittals (Section 108.13)
- 58 (8) Warranty documentation (Section 108.17)
- 59 (9) Project Closing Documents (Section 108.19)
- 60
- 61

62 In addition to the foregoing, the Contractor shall provide any other
63 materials, correspondence, and submittals using the E-Construction
64 platform as directed by the Engineer.
65

66 **(E) Resources.** The Contractor shall provide a comprehensive list of
67 Contractor labor and equipment, including all subcontractor labor and equipment,
68 that will be deployed on the project, using spreadsheet-based templates provided
69 in the E-Construction platform. All template fields shall be completed. The
70 submitted information shall comply with the requirements of Specification Section
71 108 – Prosecution and Progress (identification of labor and equipment resources)
72 and Specification Section 109 - Measurement and Payment (cost data) and
73 represent all individual personnel with labor categories and rates, and all
74 equipment owned or rented, with associated rates, on this project. Updates for
75 additional personnel or equipment shall be accomplished by the Contractor at will
76 and shall be completed when directed by the Engineer.
77

78 **636.04 Measurement.** The Engineer will measure additional E-Construction
79 programs, additional licenses, or additional equipment, if ordered by the Engineer, on a
80 force account basis in accordance with Subsection 109.06 – Force Account Provisions
81 and Compensation.

82
83 **636.05 Payment.** The Engineer will pay for the additional E-Construction programs,
84 additional licenses, or additional equipment, on a force account basis in accordance with
85 Subsection 109.06 – Force Account Provisions and Compensation.

86
87 The Engineer may withhold progress payment until the Contractor is in compliance
88 with all E-Construction requirements.

89
90

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Additional E-Construction Programs, additional licenses or additional equipment	Force Account

91
92
93
94
95

96 An estimated amount for force account may be allocated in the proposal schedule
97 under “Additional E-Construction Programs, additional licenses or additional equipment.”
98 The actual amount to be paid will be the sum shown on accepted force account records.

99
100
101
102
103

END SECTION 636

1 Delete Section 647 in its entirety and replace with the following:

2
3 **“SECTION 647 – FIBER OPTIC CABLE**

4
5 **647.01 Description.** This work includes furnishing labor, materials, tools,
6 machinery, and equipment necessary to install fiber optic cable according to the
7 contract.

8
9 There shall be a fiber optic cable Subcontractor, who shall have at least 3
10 (three) years experience in installing fiber optic systems specifically for outdoor
11 overhead joint-pole and underground in traffic-highway applications. The fiber
12 optic cable Subcontractor shall be responsible for testing all fiber optic cables to
13 provide a documented optical budget loss analysis. The fiber optic cable
14 Subcontractor shall be responsible for all hookups, assignments, dedication,
15 testing, matching, termination, and splicing of the fiber optic cables, unless
16 otherwise indicated. All fiberoptic splice points shall have pigtailed on all fiberoptic
17 members which attach to fiberoptic hardware and components with SC-
18 connectors. All unused fiber optic strands shall be jumpered color for color using
19 a fiberoptic patch panel. The fiber optic cable Subcontractor shall be fully
20 responsible for all splices, budget loss, attenuators, appropriate fiber hardware,
21 accessories, and pigtail connections for a fully operational system. All other
22 hardware, equipment, and labor necessary shall be considered incidental.

23
24 **647.02 Materials.** The fiber optic cables, which will be used to transmit
25 video and data signals, will consist of 72 single-mode fibers. Cables will be
26 installed in existing and new conduits. The Contractor shall furnish and install
27 fiber optic cable suitable, and meeting standards, for underground and aerial
28 lashing installations. The fiber optic cables shall meet the following
29 specifications:

30
31 Armored loose-tube, 72 single-mode OS2 fiber optic cable suitable for overhead
32 or underground installation. Cable shall be 8.3/125 micron loose buffer, single-
33 mode, step index optical fiber cable containing glass of type, SMF-28e, AFL SR-
34 15e, or approved equal, and that meets the following specifications:

- 35 1. ITU-T G.652 (Categories A, B, C and D)
- 36 2. IEC Specification 60793-2-50 Type B1.3
- 37 3. TIA/EIA 492-CAAB
- 38 4. Telecordia GR-20

39
40 All cables shall be free of material or manufacturing defects and dimensional
41 non-uniformity that would:

42 Interfere with the cable installation using accepted cable installation
43 practices. Degrade the transmission performance and environmental
44 resistance after installation. Inhibit proper connection to interfacing
45 elements.

46 Otherwise yield an inferior product.

48 **(A) Mechanical and Performance Requirements.** The cable shall be a rugged
49 all dielectric armored outdoor cable containing color coded buffer tubes with
50 12 single mode color-coded fibers per- buffer tube, dual window (1310 nm
51 and 1550 nm) fibers with UV acrylate coating in color coded, gel-free, loose
52 buffer tubes.

53 Strand the loose buffer tubes around an all-dielectric center strength element
54 using a reverseoscillation lay, wrapped by water blocking core separator or
55 functional equivalent. The maximum allowable attenuation of the fiber is .35
56 dB/km for 1310 nm and .25 dB/km for 1550 nm.

57 Each buffer tube shall contain a water blocking element for water-blocking
58 protection. The water blocking elements shall be non-nutritive to fungus,
59 electrically non-conductive. The buffer-tube shall be gel-free. Apply water
60 swellable tape longitudinally around the outside of the stranded tubes/fillers. The
61 water swellable tape shall be non-nutritive to fungus, electrically non-
62 conductive, and homogenous. It shall also be free from dirt and foreign matter.
63 The cable manufacturer shall be TL 9000 registered.

64
65 **(B) Outer Jacket.** Cables shall be all dielectric cable (with armoring) and shall
66 be jacketed (sheathed) with **yellow** medium density polyethylene as defined
67 by ASTM D1248, Type II, Class C, Category 4 and Grades J4, E7 and E8.

68 Armored cable shall have two jackets, one molded to the outside of the armor
69 and one that floats freely within the armor and contains the buffer tubes and
70 other fiber optic cable construction components as required.

71 Apply jacketing material directly over the tensile strength members to provide
72 mechanical protection, and to serve as the primary moisture barrier.

73 Design cable sheath to meet or exceed the tensile criteria defined in EIA-455-
74 89a. Ensure the jacket or sheath is free of any holes, splits, or blisters. The
75 cable jacket shall contain no metal elements and shall be of a consistent
76 thickness. The cable shall contain at least one ripcord under the sheath for easy
77 sheath removal.

78
79 **(C) Temperature.** The shipping, storage, installation, and operating
80 temperature range of the cable shall meet or exceed -20 °F to +155 °F (-29
81 °C to +60°C).

82
83 **(D) Loose Buffer.** Contain single-mode fibers in a loose buffer tube.

84 The configuration shall be dimensionally sized to minimize local stresses
85 and microbend losses.

86 The optical fiber cable shall be an approved product of the U.S. Department
87 of Agriculture, Rural Electrification Administration in accordance with the
88 requirements of REA-PE-90, or as otherwise indicated, and shall conform to
89 EIA/TIA-598.

90 Each optical fiber shall consist of a doped silica core surrounded by a
91 concentric silica cladding.

92 Buffer tubes shall be polypropylene. Include fillers in the cable core to lend
93 symmetry to the cable cross section where needed.

94 **(E) Colors.** All optical fibers shall be identifiable by standard color codes as

95 defined in EIA/TIA-
96 598. Each fiber shall be distinguishable, from others by means of color coding
97 and shall conform to the following EIA/TIA sequence of colors:
98

1. Blue	7. Red
2. Orange	8. Black
3. Green	9. Yellow
4. Brown	10. Violet
5. Slate	11. Rose
6. White	12. Aqua

99
100 Buffer tubes containing fibers shall also be color-coded with distinct and
101 recognizable colors according to the following sequence of colors:
102

1. Blue
2. Orange
3. Green
4. Brown
5. Slate
6. White
7. Red
8. Black
9. Yellow
10. Violet
11. Rose
12. Aqua

103
104 The color formulation shall be compatible with the fiber coating and be heat
105 stable. Color formulation shall not fade or smear or be susceptible to migration
106 and it shall not affect the transmission characteristics of the optical fibers and shall
107 not cause fibers to stick together.

108
109 **(F) Cable Marking.** The fiber optic cable outer jacket shall be marked with
110 manufacturer's name, the year of manufacture, the words "optical fiber
111 cable", fiber count, type of fiber, and sequential linear foot markings.

112 Repeat the markings every 3 feet.

113 The actual length of the cable shall be within -0/+1% of the
114 length marking. The marking shall be in a contrasting color
115 to the cable jacket.

116 The marking shall be 2.5 mm in height and must be permanent weatherproof
117 and shall not wear off during the installation in the underground conduit system.

118
119 **(G) Quality Assurance Provision.** The fiber optic cable shall meet or
120 exceed the requirements of this specification when measured in
121 accordance with the methods of the individual requirements or the following
122 methods as defined in EIA-455-A:

123
124
125
126
127
128
129
130
131
132
133
134
135
136
137
138
139
140
141
142
143
144
145
146
147
148
149
150
151
152
153
154
155
156
157
158
159
160
161
162
163
164
165
166
167
168
169

1. Fiber dimensions
2. Attenuation
3. Numerical aperture
4. Fiber proof test
5. Crush resistance
6. Cable bending
7. Tensile load
8. Impact resistance
9. Attenuation vs. Temperature

(H) Packaging. Top and bottom ends of the cable shall be available for testing.

Both ends of the cable shall be sealed to prevent the ingress of moisture. Each reel shall have a weather resistant reel tag attached identifying the reel and cable.

The reel tag shall include the following information:

Cable number	Gross Weight
Shipped length in meters	Job order number
Product Number	Date cable tested

Each cable shall be accompanied by a cable data sheet. Cable data shall include manufacturer number, billable length, bandwidth specs and measured attenuation of each fiber.

(I) Raceway Innerduct. Raceway Innerduct shall be installed in all new and existing raceways containing new 72 strand fiber optic cables. Innerduct will consist of flexible, textile material, commonly referred to as "fabric duct". Fabric duct will have, the following minimum specifications:

(1) Three cell configuration, shall be attached the entire length of the product, to help minimize twisting of cable. Maximum coefficient of friction shall be 0.08.

(2) Innerduct shall contain color coded stitching for cell identification, with a solid copper, polyvinyl color coated conductor (19 AWG minimum) for tracing, rated for a minimum of 6 amps and 600 volts. Conductor shall be located in the sidewall edge fold of the sleeve.

(3) All cells will contain a minimum 1250lb pull tape, color coded.

170 MaxCell or approved BICSI compliant product.

171
172 **647.03 Construction Requirements.**

173
174 **(A) Material Sample and Certificate of Compliance.** The Contractor
175 shall submit material samples according to Subsection 106.04 – Material
176 Sample, and any certificates of compliance according to Subsection
177 106.07 – Certificate of Compliance.

178
179 The Contractor shall submit a fiber optic cable pulling plan for
180 review and approval by the Engineer prior to beginning fiber optic cable
181 installation. The fiber optic cable pulling plan shall include:

- 182
183 (1) Location of start and end of pulls,
184
185 (2) Location of cable reel trailers during installation,
186
187 (3) Location of any “figure-eight” of fiber optic cable, and
188
189 (4) Location of staged equipment.

190
191 Upon completion of the work, submit an “As Built” or corrected plan
192 showing in detail the following:

- 193
194 (1) Construction changes,
195
196 (2) Location and attenuation of every event along the
197 installed fiber optic cable,
198
199 (3) Index of refraction of installed fiber,
200
201 (4) Fiber optic cable index of refraction, and
202
203 (5) Sequential fiber optic cable markings at each pullbox,
204 cabinet, and splice closure.

205
206 **(B) Excavation and Backfill.** Excavation and backfill shall conform to
207 Section 204 – Excavation and Backfill for Miscellaneous Facilities.

208
209 The Contractor shall be responsible for the repair of any damage to
210 pavements, sidewalks and other improvements. Place the material from
211 the excavation to prevent damage and obstruction to vehicular and
212 pedestrian traffic and interference with surface drainage.

213
214 **(C) Fiber Optic Cable.** The fiber optic cable Subcontractor shall install
215 the new fiber optic cable underground in conduits as shown on the plans.
216 The Contractor will be responsible for furnishing and pulling the new fiber

217 in PVC ductlines using a breakaway swivel to prevent exceeding the
218 tensile load during installation.

219
220 All fiber optic splices shall be fusion splices. Mechanical splices
221 shall not be used. Fiber optic splice locations are permitted only at splice
222 points where splice cabinets are shown on the plans, or in existing State
223 Department of Transportation signal pullboxes as is necessary, and only
224 with the prior approval of the Department of Transportation Services
225 (DTS), and the State Department of Transportation (DOT), Highways
226 Division. Fiber optic fibers shall be spliced in every splice cabinet location,
227 and it is the responsibility of the Contractor to maintain a continuous run
228 throughout the system. The Contractor shall leave a minimum of 20-feet
229 of cable service loops at every cabinet and 10 feet at every pullbox.

230
231 Provide documented historical cable pulling data indicating tensile
232 forces exerted on the cable during the installation. Any tension
233 measurements, which exceed the manufacturer's recommendation, will be
234 considered means for the cable rejection. The fiber optic cable
235 Subcontractor shall be fully responsible for the quality and integrity of the
236 installed cable and the operability of the final fiber optic cable product. All
237 fibers shall be spliced at camera cabinets, hubs, and splice cabinets and
238 shall have no more than 0.07 dB loss per splice based on the appropriate
239 system operating wavelength.

240
241 The Contractor shall complete all required fiber optic splices prior to
242 final testing and acceptance. As part of the final testing and acceptance,
243 submit optical time domain reflectometer (OTDR) readings in both
244 hardcopy and electronic formats (such that it can be examined using the
245 manufacturer's OTDR software) to the Engineer for review. Testing shall
246 be conducted on all singlemode fibers at 1310 nm and 1550 nm.
247 Powermeter attenuation testing should be performed at dual wavelength,
248 bi-directionally.

249
250 All necessary equipment and plug-in, fiber optic pigtails, fittings,
251 splice tags, enclosures, and work to complete an operational system shall
252 be furnished and installed by the Contractor, unless otherwise indicated,
253 at no added cost, and will be considered included in the cost of the
254 contract items in this Section.

255
256 **(D) Services Provided By The City.**

257
258 The City and County of Honolulu, Department of Transportation Services
259 (DTS) will not be responsible for any splices or connections in pullboxes
260 and cabinet locations.

261
262 The Contractor shall be responsible for the following:

263

264 (1) The Contractor will be responsible for all required splices
265 and connections in pullboxes and CCTV cabinet locations.

266
267 (2) Arrange for phases of work with DTS or as specified by the
268 Engineer.

269
270 (3) Give at least seven calendar days of advance notice to DTS
271 when phases of the work require its services.

272
273 **(E) Restoring Pavements and Other Improvements.** Restore the
274 existing pavements and other improvements such as driveways,
275 sidewalks, curbs and gutters disturbed by excavation to their original
276 condition according to the contract. Materials used for restoration work
277 shall be equal to or better in quality than the materials the Contractor will
278 replace, and matching in thickness, texture, and color whenever
279 applicable. The grades of the restored surfaces shall conform to the
280 existing grades.

281
282 **(F) Warranty.** Materials and equipment installed for permanent
283 construction shall be new. The contract contemplates the use of first-
284 class material and equipment throughout the performance of the contract.

285
286 Secure from the manufacturer(s), a warranty or warranties
287 guaranteeing equipment from defects in materials, design and
288 workmanship for not less than 12 months from the date of acceptance.

289
290 When requiring adjustments or repairs during the warranty period,
291 adjust or repair the existing unit within 24 hours from the time of
292 notification.

293
294 When requiring repairs that need factory corrections during the
295 warranty period, replace the existing unit with an accepted temporary
296 operational replacement unit within 24 hours from the time of notification
297 until the Contractor can install the new unit. Install the new, identical non-
298 defective unit within 30 days from the time of notification.

299
300 **647.04 Method of Measurement.**

301
302 **(A)** Installation of pullboxes, ITS fiber optic cable, innerduct, and
303 ductline will be measured in accordance to contract
304 documents.

305
306 **(B)** ITS demolition will be paid on a lump sum basis.
307 Measurement for payment will not apply.

308
309 **647.05 Payment.** The Engineer will pay for the accepted fiber optic cable
310 underground at the contract unit price per linear foot complete in place. The

311 price includes full compensation for messenger cable both, existing and new,
312 splicing, patch panels, and all other materials required to complete a fully
313 functioning fiber optic infrastructure. submitting the equipment list and drawing;
314 furnishing, installing, splicing and taping the cable, as required; making the
315 connections; providing turn-on service, restoring pavements and other
316 improvements; testing and furnishing equipments, tools, labor, materials and
317 other incidentals necessary to complete the work.

318

319 The Engineer will make payment under:

320

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Type "B" Pullbox	Each
ITS _____ Fiber Optic Cable	Lin. Ft.
ITS _____ Innerduct	Lin. Ft.
ITS Ductline _____, Concrete Encased	Lin. Ft.
ITS Demolish _____	Lump Sum"

322

323

324

325

326

327

328

329

330

331

332

333

334

335

336

END OF SECTION 647

48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75

Installation of a retrofit replacement module into existing pedestrian signal housing shall only require the removal of the existing optical unit components, shall be weather tight and fit securely in the housing; and shall connect directly to existing electrical wiring. The LED module shall have a visual appearance similar to that of an incandescent lamp (ie: Smooth and non-pixelated). Screwed on lenses are not allowed. Only modules with internal mask shall be utilized. No external silk-screen shall be permitted.

When not illuminated, the WALKING PERSON, UPRAISED HAND, and COUNTDOWN DIGITS shall not be readily visible. The countdown digits of the pedestrian signal module shall be located to the right of the associated UPRAISED HAND. The display of the number of remaining seconds shall begin only at the beginning of the pedestrian change interval. After the countdown displays zero, the display shall remain dark until the beginning of the next countdown. The walking person, hand icons and countdown digits shall be incandescent looking.

The units shall not have any external attachments, dip switches, toggle switches or options that will allow the mode to be changed from counting the clearance cycle, to the full walk/don't walk cycle or any other modification to the icons or digits.

For each nominal module, use the corresponding minimum H (height) and W (width) measurements:

Module Size	Icon Height	Icon Width	Countdown Height	Countdown Width	Countdown Segment Width
(16 x 18 in)	11 in	7 in	9 in	7 in	0.7 in

76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89

All exposed components of a module shall be suitable for prolonged exposure to the environment. As a minimum, the module shall be rated for use in the ambient operating temperature range, measured at the exposed rear of the module, of -40°C to +74°C (-40°F to +165°F).

The module shall be a single, self-contained device, not requiring on-site assembly for installation into an existing pedestrian signal housing. The power supply shall be located inside the pedestrian signal module. The assembly and manufacturing process for the module shall be designed to assure all internal LED and electronic components are adequately supported to withstand mechanical shock and vibration from high winds and other sources.

90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100
101
102
103
104
105
106
107
108
109
110
111
112
113
114
115
116
117
118
119
120
121
122
123
124
125
126
127
128
129
130
131
132
133
134

The front window shall be a transparent polycarbonate material with internal masking to prevent the icons and digits from being visible when not in operation. External masking or silk-screen technology shall not be permitted.

Each module shall be identified on the backside with the manufacturer's name, model, serial number and operating characteristics. The operating characteristics shall include the nominal operating voltage and stabilized power consumption, in watts and/or Volt-Amperes.

(C) Photometric Requirements

For a minimum period of 60 months, the maintained minimum luminance values for the modules under operating conditions, when measured normal to the plane of the icon surface, shall not be less than:

- Walking person: 2,200 cd/m²;
- Hand: 1,400 cd/m².
- Countdown digits: 1,400 cd/m²;

The luminance of the emitting surface, measured at angles from the normal of the surface, may decrease linearly to a value of 50% of the values listed above at an angle of 15 degrees. The LED module shall have a visual appearance similar to that of an incandescent lamp (ie: Smooth and non-pixelated).

Maximum permissible luminance: When operated within the temperature range, the actual luminance for a module shall not exceed three times the required peak value of the minimum maintained luminance. Luminance uniformity: The uniformity of the signal output across the emitting section of the module lens (i.e. the hand, person or countdown icon) shall not exceed a ratio of 5 to 1 between the maximum and minimum luminance values (cd/m²).

The standard colors for the LED Pedestrian Signal Module shall be White for the walking person and Portland Orange for the hand icon and the countdown digits.

(D) Electrical Requirements

All wiring and terminal blocks shall meet the requirements of Section 13.02 of the VTCSH Standard. Maximum of three secured, color coded, 1 meter (39 in) long 600 V, 16 AWG minimum, jacketed wires, conforming to the National Electrical Code, rated for service at +105°C, are to be provided for electrical connection. The

135
136
137
138
139
140
141
142
143
144
145
146
147
148
149
150
151
152
153
154
155
156
157
158
159
160
161
162
163
164
165
166
167
168
169
170
171
172
173
174
175
176
177
178
179

conductors shall be color coded with orange for the hand, blue for the walking person and white as the common lead.

LED modules shall operate from a 60 ± 3 Hertz ac line power over a voltage range from 80 to 135 VAC RMS. Nominal operating voltage for all measurements shall be 120 ± 3 VAC RMS. Fluctuations in line voltage over the range of 80 to 135 VAC RMS shall not affect luminous intensity by more than ± 10 %. To prevent the appearance of flicker, the module circuitry shall drive the LEDs at frequencies greater than 100 Hz when modulated, or at DC, over the voltage range specified.

Low Voltage Turn Off: There should be no illumination of the module when the applied voltage is less than 35 VAC RMS. To test for this condition, each icon must first be fully illuminated at the nominal operating voltage. The applied voltage shall then be reduced to the point where there is no illumination. This point must be greater than 35 VAC RMS.

Turn-ON and Turn-OFF Time: A module shall reach 90% of full illumination (turn-ON) within 75 msec of the application of the nominal operating voltage. The signal shall cease emitting visible illumination (turn-OFF) within 75 msec of the removal of the nominal operating voltage.

Default Condition: For abnormal conditions when nominal voltage is applied to the unit across the two-phase wires (rather than being applied to the phase wire and the neutral wire) the pedestrian signal unit shall default to the hand symbol. The on-board circuitry of a module shall include voltage surge protection:

- To withstand high-repetition noise transients and low-repetition high-energy transients as specified in NEMA Standard TS-2 2003; Section 2.1.8
- Section 8.2 IEC 1000-4-5 & Section 6.1.2 ANSI/IEEE C62.41.2-2002, 3kV, 2 ohm
- Section 8.0 IEC 1000-4-12 & Section 6.1.1 ANSI/IEEE C62.41.2-2002, 6kV, 30 ohm

The LED signal and associated on-board circuitry shall meet the requirements of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Title 47, Subpart B, Section 15 regulations concerning the emission of electronic noise by Class A digital devices. The modules shall provide a power factor of 0.90 or greater when operated at nominal operating voltage, and 25°C (77°F). Total harmonic distortion

180 induced into an AC power line by the module, operated at nominal
181 operating voltage, and at 25°C (77°F) shall not exceed 20%.

182
183 The current draw shall be sufficient to ensure compatibility and
184 proper triggering and operation of load current switches and conflict
185 monitors in signal controller units. Off State Voltage Decay: When
186 the module is switched from the On state to the Off state the terminal
187 voltage shall decay to a value less than 10 VAC RMS in less than
188 100 milliseconds when driven by a maximum allowed load switch
189 leakage current of 10 milliamps peak (7.1 milliamps AC).

190
191 **(E) Module Functions**

192
193 The module shall operate in one mode: *Clearance Cycle*
194 *Countdown Mode Only*. The module shall start counting when the
195 flashing don't walk turns on and will countdown to "0" and turn off
196 when the steady "Don't Walk" signal turns on. The *module shall not*
197 *have user accessible switches or controls for the purpose of*
198 *modifying the cycle, icons or digits*. At power on, the module enters
199 a single automatic learning cycle. During the automatic learning
200 cycle, the countdown display shall remain dark. The unit shall re-
201 program itself if it detects any increase or decrease of Pedestrian
202 Timing. The digits shall go blank once a change is detected and
203 then take one complete pedestrian cycle (with no counter during
204 this cycle) to adjust its buffer timer.

205
206 The module shall allow for consecutive cycles without displaying
207 the steady Hand icon ("Don't Walk"). The module shall recognize
208 preemption events and temporarily modify the crossing cycle
209 accordingly. If the controller preempts during the walking man, the
210 countdown shall follow the controller's directions and shall adjust
211 from walking man to flashing hand. It shall start to count down
212 during the flashing hand. If the controller preempts during the
213 flashing hand, the countdown shall continue to count down without
214 interruption. The next cycle, following the preemption event, shall
215 use the correct, initially programmed values. This specification is
216 worded such that the flashing don't walk time is not modified.

217
218 If the controller output displays Don't Walk steady condition or if
219 both the hand /person go dark and the unit has not arrived to zero,
220 the unit suspends any timing and the digits shall go dark.

221 **(F) Warranty**

222
223 Manufacturers will provide the following warranty provisions.
224 Replacement or repair of an LED signal module that fails to function

225 as intended due to workmanship or material defects within the first
 226 5 years (60 months) from the date of project acceptance.”

227
 228 **(IV)** Amend **Subsection 770.05(A)- Controller Assembly** from line 617 to
 229 625 to read:

230
 231 **“(1)** Model 332A controller cabinet refers to latest Model 332A controller
 232 cabinet listed on CALTRANS QPL. Model 170E controller will be provided
 233 by DTS.

234
 235 **(2)** The 170E software shall be the latest version of BI Trans Systems,
 236 Inc’s 233 Traffic Signal Program and shall be Contractor furnished. The
 237 Contractor shall furnish and install the EPROM chips in the controller.

238
 239 **(3)** Each controller assembly listed in Table 770.05-1 – Controller
 240 Assembly Requirements contains sufficient equipment for full 8-vehicle, 4-
 241 pedestrian, and 4-preemption phase intersection, even though the
 242 contract documents may not require it.
 243

TABLE 770.05-1 – CONTROLLER ASSEMBLY REQUIREMENTS	
<u>Item</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
Model 2070ATC Controller	Gov. Furn. Equip.
Model 412C Prom Module	1
Model IP Modem	1
332A Aluminum Cabinet	1
Model 200 Load Switches	12
Model 204 Flasher	All
Model 242 Isolators	2
Model FS/ST Isolator	All
Flash Transfer Relays	All
Software	1
Model 210ECL Conflict Monitor (Crimp and Poke Type, such as Molex Dualcon TM Straight/on Edge Dual Position Connectors, or approved equal)	1
Model 262C Detector Amplifiers (Rotary Sw Type)	8
Model M762 Preempt. Car (Non-QPL) with M768 Auxiliary Input Panel	2

244
 245 **(V)** Amend **Subsection 770.05(B)- Model 170E Controller** by deleting line
 246 643.
 247

248 (VI) Amend **Subsection 770.05(C)- Cabinet** by deleting lines 660 to 665.

249

250 (VII) Amend **Subsection 770.05(D)- Auxiliary Equipment** from line 697 to 741
251 to read:

252

253 **(1) Model M762 Optical Preemption Module with M768 Auxiliary**
254 **Input Panel.** M762 shall be card-type and shall interface with Model 170
255 cabinet preemption slots of input file. Each M762 Module shall have two
256 channels of preemption. M762 shall include firmware to discriminate
257 between two valid priority signals, to prioritize valid same priority signals
258 on a first come, first served basis, and to override low priority signal if high
259 priority is received. M762 Module shall receive input signals (9.639 and
260 14.035 Hz) to permit priority preemption operation within 170 local
261 intersection program. M762 shall optically isolate output signals and shall
262 trigger active low signal to controller for high priority and pulsed active low
263 signal for low priority. M768 Auxiliary Input Panel shall be used to
264 interconnect M762 with the terminals inside the traffic cabinet. The State's
265 preemption systems employ the 3M/Global Traffic Technologies Opticom
266 System. New preemption equipment shall be 3M/Global Traffic
267 Technologies Opticom or accepted equal that is fully compatible with
268 3M/Global Traffic Technologies Opticom.

269

270 **(2) Security Tumbler for Signal Cabinet.** The signal control cabinet
271 door locks (2 locks for each cabinet) are keyed to take Best Lock Series
272 tumblers. The contractor shall furnish and install 2 lock cylinders that will
273 fit in the current locks on the signal cabinet. The lock cylinders keys shall
274 be one of a kind, licensed to DTS, and each cylinder shall have 2 sets of
275 keys with "do not duplicate" stamped on each key.

276

277

278 (VIII) Amend **Subsection 770.06(G) – Type 7 Preemption Detector**
279 **(Opticom) Cables** from line 788 to 798 to read:

280

281 **“(G) Type 7 - Preemption Detector (Opticom) Cables.** Preemption
282 detector (Opticom) cables are specific cables that run continuously from
283 optical detectors mounted on traffic signal standards to terminal blocks for
284 M762 phase module located in controller cabinet. Each detector shall be
285 furnished with its own cable running back to controller cabinet. 3M/Global
286 Traffic Technologies' M138 Optical Detector Cable shall be furnished for
287 detector cable because it is compatible and consistent with requirements
288 for Opticom Preemption System. M138 cable shall be furnished that is
289 BerkTek Type B, shield jacket, three - insulated conductor cable, 20 AWG,
290 one - 20 AWG bare stranded ground, 600 Volts, orange-blue-yellow color
291 coded and 5/16 inch diameter.”

292

293 **(IX) Amend Subsection 770.11 – Preemption Detectors** from line 997 to
294 1009 to read:

295
296 **“(A) Description.** Preemption Detectors shall be located on traffic
297 signal standards to convert optical signals emitted from an emergency
298 vehicle to electrical pulses for emergency preemption of traffic signals.
299 Electrical signals from optical detector shall be transmitted by 4-
300 conductor cable to preemption module M762 located in input slot of
301 controller cabinet. M762 preemption module shall direct and hold
302 controller in preemption mode until signal disappears. Preprogrammed
303 selection of phases and signal displays shall be controlled by Local
304 Intersection Program. The State’s preemption system employ 3M/Global
305 Traffic Technologies Opticom System. New preemption equipment shall be
306 by 3M/Global Traffic Technologies Opticom or equal accepted by the
307 Engineer, that is fully compatible with 3M/Global Traffic Technologies
308 Opticom. Astro-mini brackets or similar device for attaching preemption
309 detector to poles shall be included.”

310
311 **(X) Amend Subsection 770.11 – Preemption Detectors** from line 1012 to
312 1021 to read:

313
314 **“(1) Type 7 Cable.** Type 7 preemption detector (Opticom) cables shall
315 be specific cables that run continuously from optical detectors mounted on
316 traffic signal standards to terminal blocks for M762 phase module in
317 controller cabinet. Type 7 preemption detector cable shall be compatible
318 with 3M/Global Traffic Technologies’ M138 Optical Detector cable and
319 shall be consistent with requirements for Opticom Preemption System.
320 M138 cable shall be BerkTek Type B, shield jacket, 3-insulated conductor,
321 20AWG stranded copper, 1-20AWG bare stranded ground, 600 volts,
322 orange-blue-yellow color coded, and 5/16-inch diameter.”

323
324 **(XI) Add Subsection 770.12 – Pedestrian Signal Push Button With Integral**
325 **Sign** to read:

326
327 **“770.12 Pedestrian Signal Push Button With Integral Sign.**

328
329 **(A) Description.** The pedestrian push button unit shall consist of an
330 assembly that can be secured to traffic poles with standard screws, be
331 tamper proof, weatherproof, and constructed so that electrical shocks are
332 impossible to receive.

333
334 **(B) Materials.**

335
336 **(1)** The housing for the push button assembly shall be of cast
337 and/or machined aluminum. The push button assembly shall be
338 weatherproof with a water diverting groove set in the outside
339 diameter of the actuator button receptor. The housing shall be

340 designed to reduce vandalism and shall mount on the side or top of
341 a pole with a minimum 2-inch diameter button. The push button
342 housing shall be capable of mounting in an 'up button' or 'down
343 button' configuration. All wire connections shall be accessible from
344 the back of the assembly.

345
346 (2) An ADA acceptable raised directional sign shall be installed
347 with stainless steel fasteners to the housing. The sign shall consist
348 of a raised walking person and a raised arrow indication. Paint the
349 unit black and paint the raised walking person and arrow white.
350 The sign shall be capable of mounting in an 'up button' or 'down
351 button' configuration. The raised walking person and arrows shall
352 be directional and match the indication as shown in the plans.

353
354 (3) The pushbutton shall extend from the sign faceplate
355 approximately three inches. The pushbutton actuator shall be
356 convex in design having a flat area on the face for uses of a stylus,
357 ADA acceptable, two inches in diameter, and have a tension of less
358 than five pounds when pressed. The button shall be manufactured
359 in a way that it cannot be stuck in a closed (constant call) position.

360
361 (4) The pedestrian push button shall be a piezo electric type and
362 be UL listed. The button shall have a stainless steel actuator and
363 shall be mounted within the housing with stainless steel, non-
364 corrosive, tamper proof fasteners. The unit shall operate between
365 12-24V DC or AC, 3 inch round mounts with 4 mounting bolts. The
366 pedestrian button shall give an audio and visual signal each time
367 the pedestrian button is activated.”

368
369 (XII) Add **Subsection 770.13 – Interconnect Fabric Subduct** to read:

370
371 **“770.13 Interconnect Fabric Subduct.**

372
373 (A) **Description** A non-metallic flexible textile raceway known
374 as interconnect fabric subduct, which is placed within PVC
375 conduits. The interconnect fabric subduct allows for the future
376 communication upgrades, including transitioning from multipair
377 copper cables to fiber optic media. To further that effort and
378 achieve maximum conduit utilization, all new and empty existing
379 conduits containing the interconnect/fiber optic cables shall contain
380 an interconnect fabric subduct. The interconnect fabric subduct
381 shall consist of flexible, textile material, sometimes referred to as
382 “fabric duct”.

383
384 (B) **Fabric** The interconnect fabric subduct shall consist of the
385 following:

386
387
388
389
390
391
392
393
394
395
396
397
398
399
400
401
402
403
404
405
406
407
408
409
410
411
412
413
414
415
416
417
418
419
420
421
422
423
424
425
426
427
428
429
430
431
432
433
434

(1) Standard Outdoor Textile subduct: Micro (33mm), 2-inch, 3-inch and 4-inch multi-cell polyester/nylon textile subduct containing 1,250 lb polyester flat woven pull tape.

Number of cells shall be the maximum number allowed for the conduit size.

(2) Conduit Plugs: Compression-type conduit plugs with locking nuts for sealing and securing one or more textile subducts within a conduit.

(3) Pull Tape: The subduct pull tape shall be constructed of synthetic fiber, printed with accurate sequential footage marks and color-coded.

(4) Duct Water Seal: products suitable for closing underground and entrance conduit openings where subduct is installed, to prevent entry of gases, liquids, or rodents into the structure.

(C) Installation The contractor shall protect the interconnect fabric subduct from the effects of moisture, UV exposure, corrosion and physical damage during installation. The contractor shall install the interconnect fabric subduct prior to installing the new interconnect and fiber optic cables.

The contractor shall provide interconnect fabric subduct in conduits using continuous unspliced lengths of interconnect fabric subduct between pull boxes, and/or termination points as indicated on the drawings.

The contractor shall make a 2" incision, approximately 18" from the end of interconnect fabric subduct. Pull out and cut off approximately 2 feet of pull-tape. Thus allowing the pull tape ends to retract back into the cells.

Using approximately 6 feet of pull tape, tie a non-slip knot to the incision. Then tie 3 to 6 half-hitch knots down to the end of interconnect fabric subduct. Apply black vinyl tape over all knots and the end of interconnect fabric subduct. Using a Bow Line knot tie a swivel to the end of 3 feet pull tape. For multi-pack installations one swivel is sufficient, but stagger each interconnect fabric subduct.

Using a Bow Line knot, attach the pull rope located in the rigid conduit to the other end of the swivel. Install interconnect fabric subduct - ensuring that no twist is introduced to the interconnect fabric subduct.

435
436
437
438
439
440
441
442
443
444
445
446
447
448
449
450
451
452
453
454
455

Provide suitable interconnect fabric subduct slack in the pull boxes, and at turns to ensure there is no kinking or binding of the product.

At locations where interconnect fabric subduct will be continuous through a pullbox, allow sufficient slack so that the interconnect fabric subduct may be secured to the side of the pullbox maintaining the minimum bending radius.

At pullboxes serving as the junction location, pull the exposed end of the interconnect fabric subduct to the far end of the pullbox, install termination bag, and secure to the pullbox.

Seal all conduit and interconnect fabric subduct entering the pullboxes to prevent entrance into the pullboxes of gases, liquids or rodents.”

END OF SECTION 770